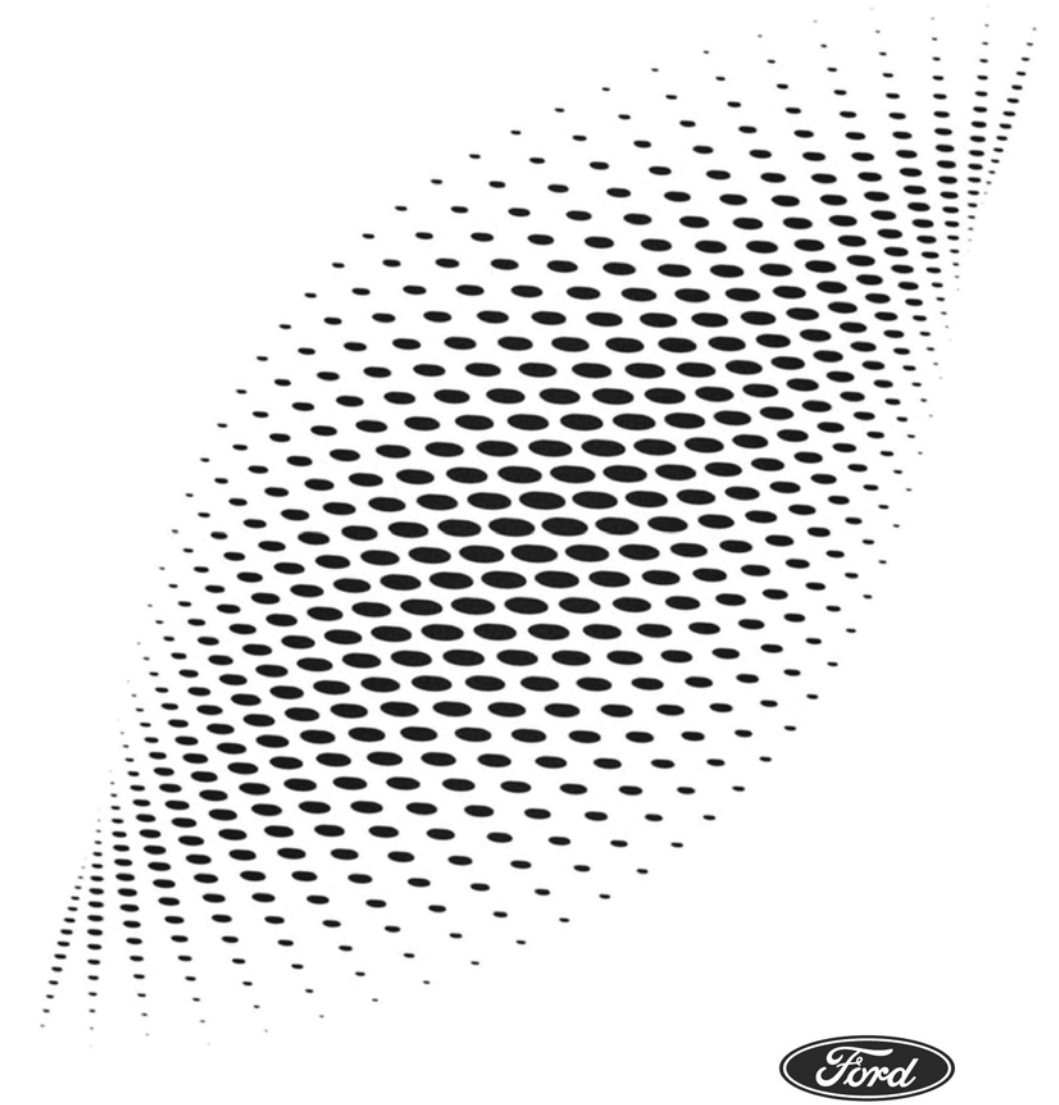
FORD **EXPLORER** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2024

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3968en-202402-20240704103845

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Publication 13
Using This Publication 14
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication 14
Special Notices - Turkey 14

Data Privacy

Data Privacy 17
Service Data 18
Event Data 18
Settings Data 19
Connected Vehicle Data 19
Mobile Device Data 19
Emergency Call System Data 20

Environment

Protecting the Environment 21
Recycling and Disposing Labels 21

Visual Search

Interior Overview - LHD 22
Interior Overview - RHD 23
Exterior Overview 24

Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions 26
Child Restraint Anchor Points 27
Child Restraints 28
Booster Seats 31
Child Safety Locks 32
Child Safety Lock Indicator 32
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting 33

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions 34
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts 34
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy 35
Seatbelt Reminder 35

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work 36
How Do the Side Airbags Work 36
How Does the Center Mounted Side Airbag Work 37
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work 37
Airbag Precautions 38
Passenger Airbag Indicators 39
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off 39
Airbags – Troubleshooting 39

Pedestrian Alert System

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System 41
Pedestrian Alert System Precautions 41

Driver State Assist

How Does Driver State Assist Work 42
Driver State Assist Precautions 42
Driver State Assist Limitations 43
Driver State Assist – Troubleshooting 43

eCall

What Is eCall 44
How Does eCall Work 44
Emergency Call Requirements 44
Emergency Call Limitations 44
Manually Making an Emergency Call 44
Emergency Call Indicators 45
Changing the Backup Battery 46
eCall – Troubleshooting 46

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Table of Contents

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations 47
Removing the Key Blade 47
Changing the Remote Control Battery 47
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control 49
Programming the Remote Control 49
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting 49

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle 50
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle 51
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function 52
Autounlock 52
Autolock 52
Mislock 52
Autorelock 52
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting 53

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry 54
Keyless Entry Limitations 54
Keyless Entry Settings 54
Using Keyless Entry 54
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting 55

Easy Entry and Exit

How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work 56
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off 56

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Hands-Free Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions 57
Opening the Liftgate 57
Switching the Hands-Free Liftgate On and Off 58
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height 59
Closing the Liftgate 59
Stopping the Liftgate Movement 61
Liftgate Obstacle Detection 61
Liftgate – Troubleshooting 61
Liftgate Videos 62

Liftgate - Vehicles With: Manual Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions 63
Opening the Liftgate 63
Closing the Liftgate 63
Liftgate – Troubleshooting 64

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System 65
Anti-Theft Alarm System 65
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings 66

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel 68
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off 68

Wipers and Washers

Wipers 70
Autowipers 71
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off 72
Reverse Wipe 72
Checking the Wiper Blades 72
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades 72
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades 73
Washers 73
Wipers and Washers Videos 75
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting 75

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Table of Contents

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control 76
Headlamps 76
Headlamps – Troubleshooting 78
Autolamps 78
Exterior Lamps 78
Automatic High Beam Control 80
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting 82
Glare Free High Beam Control 83
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting 84
Adaptive Front Lighting 85
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting 85

Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off 86
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off 86
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off 86
Interior Lamp Function 86
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness 87
Ambient Lighting 87
Interior Lighting Videos 88

Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows 89
Global Opening and Closing 90
Window Bounce-Back 91

Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions 92
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror 92

Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors 93
Folding the Exterior Mirrors 93
Exterior Mirrors Videos 94

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview 95
Power Gauge 96
Speedometer 96
Vehicle Range Display 96
High Voltage Battery Gauge 96
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps 97
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps 97
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators 99
Instrument Cluster Indicators 99

Instrument Cluster Display

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls 102
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display 102
Trip Summary 104

Personalized Settings

Changing the Language 106
Changing the Measurement Unit 106

Head Up Display

What Is the Head Up Display 107
Head Up Display Overview 107
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off 107
Head Up Display Settings 107

Remote Start

What Is Remote Start 109
Remote Start Precautions 109
Remote Start Limitations 109
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle 109
Remote Start Settings 109

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Climate Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off 110
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off 110
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off 110
Switching Defrost On and Off 111
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off 111
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off 111
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off 111
Setting the Blower Motor Speed 111
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off 111
Setting the Temperature 112
Directing the Flow of Air 112
Auto Mode 113
Climate Control Hints 114

Interior Air Quality

Auto Air Refresh 116

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions 117
Sitting in the Correct Position 117
Manual Seats 118
Power Seats 118
Massage Seats 121
Heated Seats 122
Front Seats Videos 122

Rear Seats

Manual Seats 124
Rear Seats Videos 125

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System 126
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work 126
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions 126
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations 126
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off 126

Memory Function

What Is the Memory Function 128
Memory Function Precautions 128
Locating the Memory Function Buttons 128
Saving a Preset Position 128
Recalling a Preset Position 129

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports 130
Playing Media Using the USB Port 130
Charging a Device 131

Power Outlet

Power Outlet Precautions 132
Locating the Power Outlets 132

Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger 133
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions 133
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger 133
Charging a Wireless Device 134

Storage

Cup Holders 135

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Glove Compartment 135
Center Console 136
Under Floor Storage 137

Starting and Powering Off

Starting and Powering Off Precautions 138
Starting the Vehicle 138
Powering Off 138
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position 139
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting 139

High Voltage Battery

What Is the High Voltage Battery 140
High Voltage Battery Precautions 140
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery 140
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery 141
Energy Consumption Regulations 141
Energy Consumption Figures 142
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting 142

Charging Your Vehicle

Charging Equipment Precautions 143
Charging Equipment Overview 144
Charging Equipment Indicators 146
Locating the Charge Port 150
Charge Port Indicators 151
AC Charging 152
DC Charging 158
Charge Coupler Manual Release 161
Charging Settings 162
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging 165
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols 165
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting 166
Charging Your Vehicle Videos 168

Electric Motor

Electric Motor Precautions 169
Selector Positions 169
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear 170
Selector Position Indicators 171
Electric Motor Audible Warnings 171
Roll-Away Protection 171
Electric Motor – Troubleshooting 173

All-Wheel Drive

How Does All-Wheel Drive Work 174
All-Wheel Drive Precautions 174
All-Wheel Drive Limitations 174
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting 174

Brakes

Brake Precautions 175
Anti-Lock Braking System 175
Brake Over Accelerator 175
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir 175
Checking the Brake Fluid 175
Brakes – Troubleshooting 176

Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake 179
Applying the Electric Parking Brake 179
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency 179
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake 180
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning 180
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge 180
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting 180

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Reverse Brake Assist

What Is Reverse Brake Assist 181
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work 181
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions 181
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off 182
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist 182
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators 182
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting 183

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work 185
Switching Auto Hold On and Off 185
Using Auto Hold 185
Auto Hold Indicators 185

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control 186
How Does Traction Control Work 186
Switching Traction Control On and Off 186
Traction Control Indicator 186
Traction Control – Troubleshooting 186

Stability Control

What Is Stability Control 187
How Does Stability Control Work 187
Switching Stability Control On and Off - AWD 187
Switching Stability Control On and Off - RWD 187
Stability Control Indicator 187
Stability Control – Troubleshooting 188

Steering

Electric Power Steering 189
Steering – Troubleshooting 189

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions 191
Switching Parking Aid On and Off 191
Rear Parking Aid 192
Front Parking Aid 193
Side Parking Aid 194
Parking Aid Indicators 195

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera 196
Rear View Camera Precautions 196
Locating the Rear View Camera 196
Rear View Camera Guide Lines 196
Rear View Camera Videos 197

360 Degree Camera

How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work 198
360 Degree Camera Precautions 198
360 Degree Camera Limitations 198
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines 198
360 Degree Camera Settings 199

Active Park Assist

What Is Active Park Assist 200
How Does Active Park Assist Work 200
Active Park Assist Precautions 200
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off 200
Searching for a Parking Space 200
Entering a Parking Space 201
Exiting a Parking Space 202

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work 203
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions 203
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations 204

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off 206
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation 206
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed 206
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap 207
Canceling the Set Speed 208
Resuming the Set Speed 208
Overriding the Set Speed 208
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators 209
Lane Centering 209
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting 212
Predictive Speed Assist 212
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting 214

Lane Change Assist

How Does Lane Change Assist Work 216
Lane Change Assist Precautions 216
Lane Change Assist Limitations 217
Switching Lane Change Assist On and Off 217
Activating and Deactivating Lane Change Assist 217
Lane Change Assist Cancellation 217
Lane Change Assist – Troubleshooting 218

Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control 219
How Does Drive Mode Control Work 219
Selecting a Drive Mode 219
Drive Modes 219
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting 220

Efficient Drive Mode

What Is Efficient Drive Mode 221
How Does Efficient Drive Mode Work 221
Efficient Drive Mode Precautions 221
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off 221
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators 222

Local Hazard Information

What Is Local Hazard Information 223
Local Hazard Information Precautions 223
Local Hazard Information Indicators 223
Enabling Local Hazard Information 223

Intelligent Speed Limiter

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter 224
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work 224
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions 224
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off 224
Setting the Speed Limit 224
Changing the Set Speed Limit 225
Canceling the Set Speed Limit 225
Resuming the Set Speed Limit 225
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit 225
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators 226
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings 226
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter 226
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting 226

Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System 227
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work 227
Lane Keeping System Precautions 227

Lane Keeping System Limitations 227
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off 228
Lane Keeping System Indicators 228
Blind Spot Assist 229
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting 233

Exit Warning

What is Exit Warning 234
How Does Exit Warning Work 234
Exit Warning Precautions 234
Exit Warning Limitations 234
Exit Warning Indicators 235
Switching Exit Warning On and Off 235
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors 235
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting 236

Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert 237
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work 237
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions 237
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations 237
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off 238
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors 238
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators 238
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting 239

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist 240
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work 240
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work 241
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions 241
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations 242
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off 243
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors 243
Forward Collision Warning 244
Evasive Steering Assist 244
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting 244

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert 246
How Does Driver Alert Work 246
Driver Alert Precautions 246
Switching Driver Alert On and Off 246
Driver Alert Indicators 247
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting 247

Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition 248
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work 248
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions 248
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations 248
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators 249
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings 249
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting 250

Load Carrying

Partitioning System 251
Load Carrying Precautions 251
Rear Loadspace Hatch 252
Roof Rack 253
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier 254
Load Carrying Videos 254

Luggage Compartment

Luggage Compartment Precautions 255
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cargo Net 255

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover 255
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor 256
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points 257
Luggage Compartment Videos 257

Connecting a Trailer
Connecting a Trailer Precautions 258
Tow Ball 258
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting 260

Towing a Trailer
Towing a Trailer Precautions 261
Towing a Trailer Limitations 261
Loading Your Trailer 261
Trailer Towing Hints 261
Towing Weights and Dimensions 262

Trailer Sway Control
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work 264
Trailer Sway Control Precautions 264

Driving Hints
Cold Weather Precautions 265
Driving on Snow and Ice 265
Breaking-In 265
Driving in Special Conditions - LHD 4WD/ RHD 4WD 265
Driving Through Shallow Water 266
Electric Vehicle 267
Floor Mats 268

Crash and Breakdown Information
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions 269
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off 270
Jump Starting the Vehicle 270
Post-Crash Alert System 272
Post-Collision Braking 272
Accessing the Emergency Exit 272
Recovery Towing 273
Transporting the Vehicle 274

Towing Your Vehicle
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions 275
Emergency Towing 275

Emergency Equipment
Storing a First Aid Kit 277
Storing a Warning Triangle 277

Fuses
Fuse Precautions 278
Under Hood Fuse Box 278
Interior Fuse Box 281
Identifying Fuse Types 286

Maintenance
Maintenance Precautions 287
Opening and Closing the Hood 287
Under Hood Overview - LHD 288
Under Hood Overview - RHD 289
Coolant 290
12V Battery 293
12V Battery – Troubleshooting 295
Adjusting the Headlamps 296
Interior Bulbs 296

Vehicle Care
Cleaning the Exterior 297
Cleaning the Interior 298
Repairing Minor Paint Damage 300
Waxing Your Vehicle 300

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage 302
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage 303

Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label 304
Information on the Tire Sidewall 304
Glossary of Tire Terminology 307
Tire Replacement Requirements 308
Using Summer Tires 309
Using Winter Tires 309
Using Snow Chains 309

Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures 311
Inflating the Tires 311
Tire Pressure Specifications 311
Inspecting the Tire for Damage 313
Tire Rotation 313

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit 315
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions 315
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit 315
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components 315
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit 316

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System 321
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions 321
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations 321
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System 322
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting 322

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire 325
Wheel Bolts 326

Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 328
Cooling System Capacity and Specification 329
Washer Fluid Specification 329
Brake Fluid Specification 329

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number 331
Vehicle Identification Plate 332

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle 333
Connected Vehicle Requirements 333
Connected Vehicle Limitations 333
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network 333
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network 333
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting 334

Audio System

Audio System Precautions 336
Identifying the Audio Unit 336
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off 336
Selecting the Audio Source 336
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source 337
Adjusting the Volume 337

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off 337
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off 337
Adding Favorites 337
Muting the Audio 338
Scrolling Through Menu Items 338
Selecting a Menu Item 338
Setting the Clock and Date 338
FM Radio 338
Switching the Display On and Off 339
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio 339

Movable Screen
Using the Movable Screen 340
Movable Screen Videos 340

Center Display Overview
Center Display Precautions 341
Center Display Limitations 341
Status Bar 341
Home Screen 341
Rebooting the Center Display 342

Voice Interaction
What is Voice Interaction 343
Setting the Wake Word 343
Beginning a Voice Interaction 343
Canceling a Voice Interaction 343
Voice Interaction Examples 343
Voice Interaction Settings 344

Phone
Phone Precautions 345
Connecting Your Phone 345
Phone Menu 345
Making and Receiving a Phone Call 346
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off 347
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off 347
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off 347

Bluetooth®
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device 349
Playing Media Using Bluetooth® 349

Apps
App Requirements 350

Personal Profiles
How Do Personal Profiles Work 351
Selecting a Personal Profile 351
Deleting a Personal Profile 351

Navigation
Connected Navigation 352
Accessing Navigation 352
Navigation Map Updates 352
Adjusting the Map 352
Setting a Destination 353
Waypoints 354
Route Guidance 355

Vehicle Software Updates
Vehicle Software Updates 356

Vehicle System Reset
Performing a System Reset 357

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey
Authorized Dealer Directory 358

Service Intervals - Turkey
Service Intervals 364

Customer Information

Rollover Warning 365
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment 365
Declaration of Conformity 365
REACH 365
Radio Frequency Certification Labels 366
Replacement Parts Recommendation 368
Mobile Communications Equipment 369
eCall User Information 370

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

WARNING: You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle center display screen, print, in FordPass app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

Note: *Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.*

Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com.

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

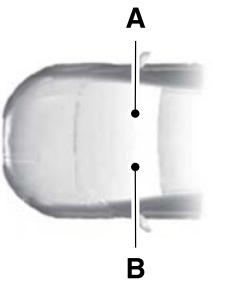
- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

Illustrations

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

The online version of the Owner's Manual may contain the very latest information, which may vary slightly from the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual originally provided with your vehicle.

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press the Owner's Manual application icon.

Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual

Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the FordPass app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

Note: *To find the local Ford website, visit https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html.*

Note: *We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.*

Printed Owner's Manual

In U.S. and Canada, visit *www.helminc.com* or see an authorized dealer.

In Europe, visit *www.z-order.de* or see an authorized dealer.

For all other countries, see your authorized dealer.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

SPECIAL NOTICES - TURKEY

Consumer* Information

*Consumer: Real or legal person acting for commercial or non-occupational purposes. If a driver drives his vehicle for commercial or occupational purposes, whether on full-time or part-time basis, he may not be evaluated as a "Consumer" under the legislation.

In the event a vehicle is purchased subject to Consumer Warranty terms but driven for commercial or occupational purposes thereafter or if purchased subject to Commercial Warranty Terms and then driven out of commercial or occupational

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

purposes, COMMERCIAL WARRANTY TERMS shall apply under general statutory provisions. This shall bind Driver and other persons who take over such vehicle. Please see Ford Warranty Terms for detailed information.

Optional rights granted to consumers pursuant to Consumer Protection Law no. 6502 and Regulation for Introductory and Owner Manuals published at the Official Gazette dated 13.06.2014 and no. 29029 and information related to authorities to which consumers may file complaints and objections are as follows:

I. Optional Rights of Consumers

1) If merchandise is understood to be defective consumer may exercise one of following rights;

a) Reneging on contract by notifying that he is ready to return sold item,

b) Retaining sold item and asking discount from sales price pro rata to defect,

c) In case excessive expense is not required, asking free of charge repair of sold item, all expenses at seller's account,

d) If possible, asking replacement of sold item with an equivalent free of defects,

you can use one of these rights. Seller shall be liable to fulfill such request preferred by consumer.

2) Rights of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects may also be exercised against manufacturer or importer. Seller, manufacturer and importer shall be severally liable for fulfillment of rights set out in this clause. Manufacturer or importer shall not be held liable if they prove that defect has arisen after merchandise is placed on the market by them.

3) If free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects would bring along disproportional inconvenience for seller, consumer may exercise one of rights of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect. During determination of disproportionality, matters such as value of merchandise free of defects, importance of defect and whether resorting to other optional rights would create any problems for consumer shall be considered.

4) In the event either right of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects is chosen, such request must be fulfilled within maximum thirty business days from notification of this request to seller, manufacturer or importer. However, concerning merchandise included at the list attachment of regulation issued as per article 58 of Consumer Protection Law no. 6502, consumer's request for free of charge repair shall be fulfilled within maximum repair period set out at the regulation. Otherwise, consumer shall be free to exercise other optional rights.

5) In cases consumer chooses right of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect, full price paid or amount of discount from price shall be promptly refunded to consumer.

6) Any expenses incurred because of exercising optional rights shall be covered by the party fulfilling the right chosen by consumer. Consumer, along with one of such optional rights, may also claim compensation as per provisions of Turkish Code of Obligations dated 11/01/2011 and no. 6098.

II. Consumer Complaints and Objections

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Consumers may file applications regarding complaints and objections to consumer courts and consumer arbitration committees in accordance with arrangements provided at Consumer Protection Law no. 6502.

Maufacturer or Importer

Ford Otomotiv Sanayi A.S.
Akpınar Mah. Hasan Basri Cad. No: 2
34885 Sancaktepe/Istanbul
Trade Registration No: 73232 - Istanbul
Tel: 0.216 564 71 00
Fax: 0.216 564 73 85
www.fordotosan.com.tr

Service Life

The service life of this vehicle is 10 years.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example battery charge level and tire pressure.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

European regulations mandate this vehicle to be equipped with an Event Data Recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 5 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the occupant seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing data by changing the modem settings. See* ***Connected Vehicle*** *(page 333).*

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 350).

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content.

The cell phone profile and media device index remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 357).

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the battery shut-off or that a system intervention by the Driver State Assist has been executed. See **Driver State Assist** (page 42). Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle propulsion storage type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Accident direction.
- Change in velocity of the vehicle.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING LABELS

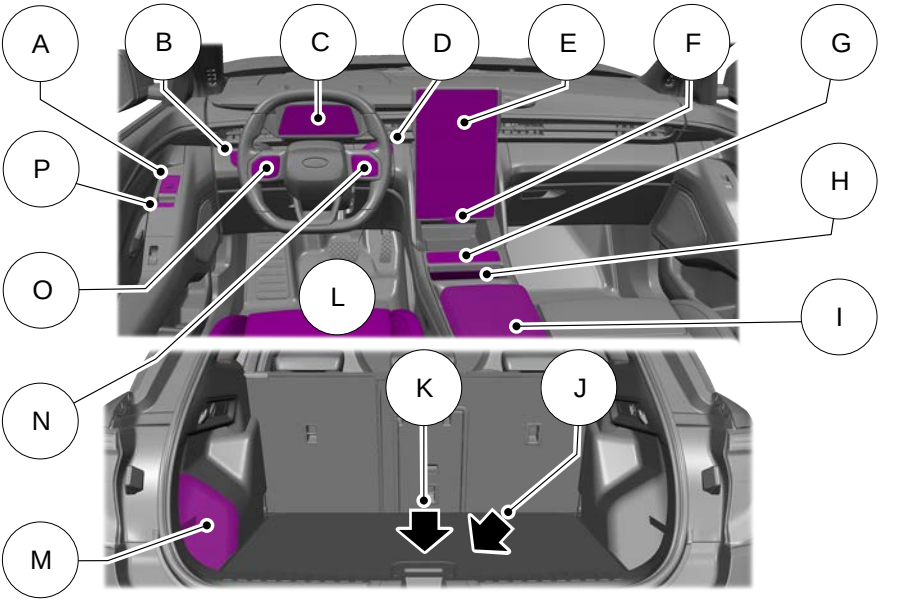
France Only





Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

INTERIOR OVERVIEW - LHD

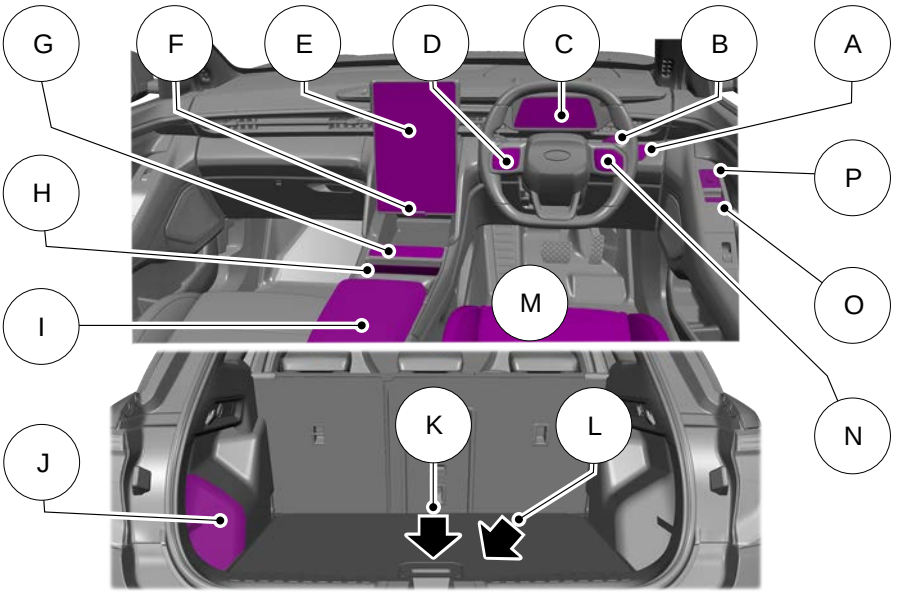


A See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 93).
B See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 76).
C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 95).
D See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 170).
E See **Center Display Precautions** (page 341).
F See **Using the Movable Screen** (page 340).
G See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 200).
H See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 134).
I See **Adjusting the Center Console** (page 136).
J See **Charging Equipment Precautions** (page 143).
K See **Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor** (page 256).
L See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 117).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

M See **Storing a Warning Triangle** (page 277).
N See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 102).
O See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 206).
P See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 89).

INTERIOR OVERVIEW - RHD

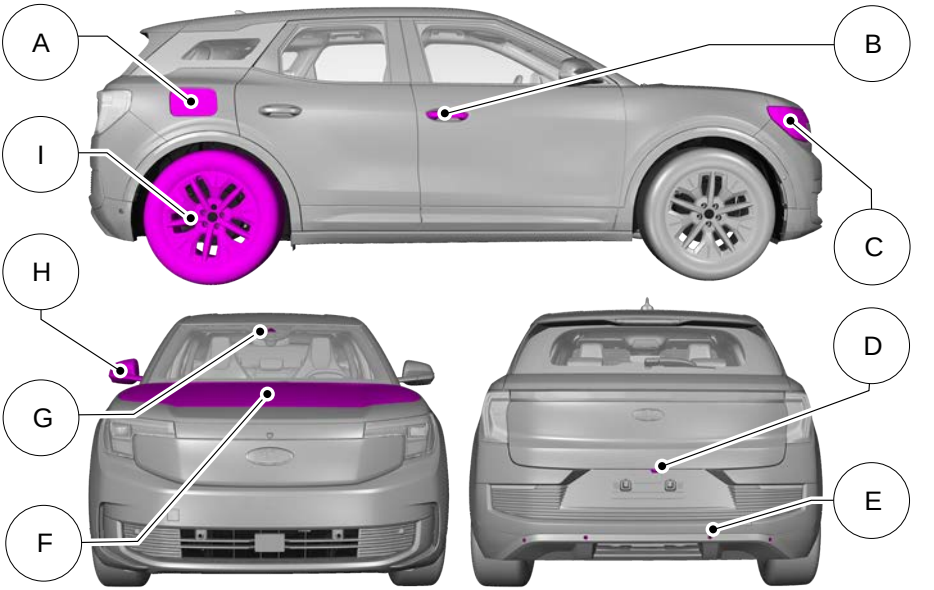


A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 76).
B See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 170).
C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 95).
D See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 206).
E See **Center Display Precautions** (page 341).
F See **Using the Movable Screen** (page 340).
G See **Switching Active Park Assist On and Off** (page 200).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

H See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 134).
I See **Adjusting the Center Console** (page 136).
J See **Storing a Warning Triangle** (page 277).
K See **Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor** (page 256).
L See **Charging Equipment Precautions** (page 143).
M See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 117).
N See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 102).
O See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 89).
P See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 93).

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

A See **Charging Equipment Precautions** (page 143).
B See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 50).
C See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 76).
D See **Rear View Camera Guide Lines** (page 196).
E See **Parking Aid Precautions** (page 191).
F See **Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit** (page 316).
G See **What Is Pre-Collision Assist** (page 240).
H See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 93).
I See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 311).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS





Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

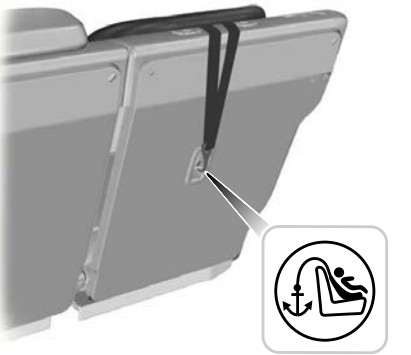
Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



Top tether anchor points are on the back of the rear seat.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag **ON**.	X	X	UF[1]	UF[1]	UF[1]
Front passenger seat with airbag **OFF**.	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]
Rear seats.[2]	U	U	U	U	U

[1] We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

[2] Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	F, G[1]	E[1]	C, D, E[1]	A, B, B1[1]	C, D[1]

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
	Fixture.	L1, L2[1]	R1[1]	R1, R2X, R2, R3[1]	F2, F2X, F3[1]	R2X, R2, R3[1]
	Size type.	IL	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					

[1] The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats	Rear Center Seat
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag **ON**.	X	-	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3[1]	B2, B3[1]	B2, B3[1]

[1] The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Size Class Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
40–83 cm (15–35 in) 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pebble 360 and FamilyFix 360 base.[1]	ISOFIX and support leg (base) or seatbelt only.
40–105 cm (15–40 in) 0–17.5 kg (0–39 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pearl 360 and FamilyFix 360 base.[1]	ISOFIX and support leg (base).
100–150 cm (40–60 in) 15–36 kg (33–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix M i-Size.[1, 2]	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

[1]We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

[2]We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: *Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.*

WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: *When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.*

BOOSTER SEATS

Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion

WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



The control is on the driver door. It enables the child safety lock.

Press the control to switch the child safety lock on. Press the control again to switch it off. A light on the control illuminates when you switch it on.

The child safety lock settings remain active when you switch your vehicle off.

Note: *To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.*

Note: *To open the rear doors when the child lock is engaged, have someone outside the vehicle open the doors.*

Note: *When you enable the child safety lock, the rear seat area turns into a child safety zone, with all interior functionalities in the rear seat area and the rear doors disabled.*

CHILD SAFETY LOCK INDICATOR



A LED on the child safety lock control illuminates when you switch them on. If the LED flashes, try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the LED continues to flash, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Electronic childproof lock. Activate it again. Owner's Manual!	Try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



A Seatbelt tongue.
B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: *It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.*

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

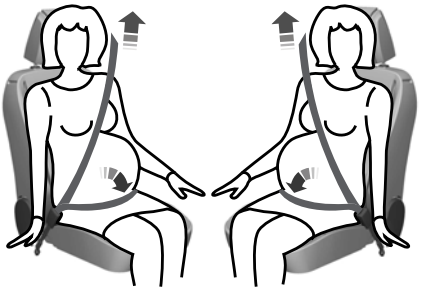
Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY

WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

Front Seats

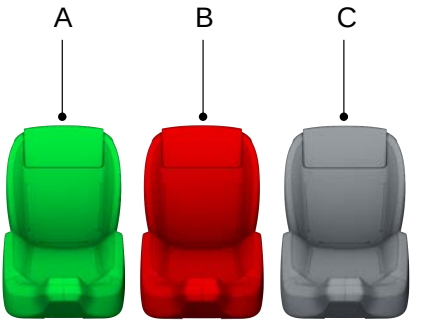
A warning lamp illuminates if the vehicle is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A front seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Rear Seats



A Rear seatbelt fastened.
B Rear seatbelt unfastened.
C Empty seat.

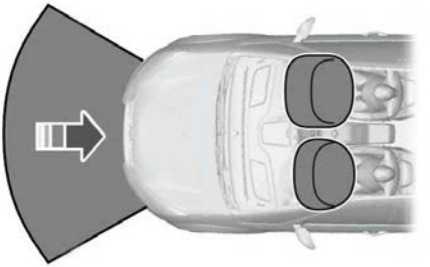
SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

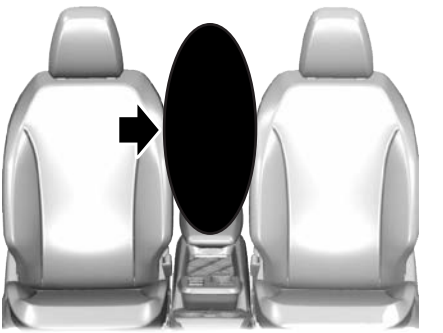


The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DOES THE CENTER MOUNTED SIDE AIRBAG WORK

The center mounted side airbag is on the innermost side of the driver seat. There is a label attached to the side of the backrest to indicate this.

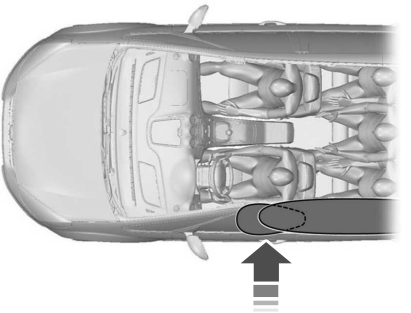


The center mounted side airbag is designed to inflate between the driver seat and the passenger seat to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

This airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. It could also deploy during a significant frontal crash or a vehicle rollover. The airbag reduces contact between the driver and front seat passenger in side impacts and rollovers. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, or a rear crash.

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: *A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATORS



The passenger airbag on and off indicators are on the overhead console.

SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF

WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

The switch is on the side of the glove compartment.

1. Insert the key blade into the switch.



2. Turn the key to the ***ON*** or ***OFF*** position.
3. When your vehicle is on, the passenger airbag status indicator lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional. If the indicator lamps do not illuminate when you switch your vehicle on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.


It illuminates when the airbag is on.

ON


It illuminates when the airbag is off.

OFF

AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS


If it does not illuminate when you switch your vehicle on, continues to flash or remains on or the Safety Alert Warning Lamp illuminates this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

See **Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps** (page 97).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Due to the quiet operation of hybrid and electric vehicles at low speeds, the system creates a subtle sound to alert pedestrians.

The system is on when your vehicle is running and not in park (P). Some sound may be audible in the passenger compartment.

PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system is not designed to detect cyclists, motorcyclists, pedestrians or animals. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result personal injury or death.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

HOW DOES DRIVER STATE ASSIST WORK

Driver state assist detects a lack of driver activity and keeps the vehicle in the lane automatically, and brakes the vehicle to a complete stop, if required. The system actively contributes to preventing or reducing the consequences of an accident.

The system uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering wheel sensor to operate.

When the system detects no steering activity it prompts you to take control of the steering wheel.



This symbol illuminates and a message appears in the instrument cluster display, prompting you to take control of the steering wheel.

If you fail to do so, the system activates and takes control of the vehicle.



When the system activates, it illuminates red in the instrument cluster display and starts to slow the vehicle down to a complete stop while maintaining steering control.

Note: *You can override the system at any time by strongly accelerating, braking or steering.*

The system attempts to warn you with short brake activations, and turns on the hazard lights, while decelerating.

Note: *If your vehicle's speed is below 50 km/h (31 mph) the system sounds the horn to warn other road users.*

When your vehicle is stationary, the system takes the following actions:

- It applies the electric parking brake.
- It unlocks the doors.
- It switches on the interior lighting.
- It initiates an emergency call (eCall). See **How Does eCall Work** (page 44).

DRIVER STATE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

WARNING: The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.

WARNING: The system does not detect vehicles that are driving in a different direction, cyclists or animals. Apply the brakes and steer as necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 203).

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 209).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

DRIVER STATE ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system detects driving situations using the radar sensors and the camera. The system only activates in the following situations:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is active.
- Lane keeping system is active.

DRIVER STATE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER STATE ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



If the system detects a fault, a symbol illuminates yellow and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Switch your vehicle off and on again.

If the problem persists, switch off lane keeping system and do not use adaptive cruise control with lane centering.

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DRIVER STATE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Driver State Assist: Take over steering!	The system activates and starts decelerating the vehicle, while maintaining steering control. You can override the system by strongly accelerating, braking or steering.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 370).

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants or by Driver State Assist. See **Driver State Assist** (page 42).

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

HOW DOES ECALL WORK

The system initiates a call to the emergency services, if an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, or to activate the high voltage battery shut off, or after a Driver State Assist system intervention. See **Driver State Assist** (page 42). This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 20).

Note: *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL



WARNING: Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2. Press the SOS symbol on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.
3. Press the emergency call button until the indicator lamp flashes green to initiate a call to the emergency services.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *Press the button again until the indicator lamp lights up green continuously and before the call is connected to cancel it.*

4. Speak to the operator.

Note: *After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.*

EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The indicator is next to the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It lights up green when you switch your vehicle on.

Emergency Call Indicator Status	Description
Indicator off.	Emergency call is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Flashing red.	Emergency call is deactivated. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Continuous red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Continuous green.	Normal operation.
Flashing green.	Emergency call is active.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Error: emergency call. Please visit workshop.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Emergency call is restricted. Please visit workshop.	Emergency call is restricted or not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

REMOVING THE KEY BLADE



Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY

WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



2. Insert the key blade into the slot and carefully push in the direction shown to remove the cover.



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

5. Reinstall the cover and the key blade.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What is the fan noise I hear when I press the unlock button on the remote control?

- This is the blower motor pushing fresh air into the cabin and out through cabin exhaust vents. Your vehicle has air purge that could turn on when you press the unlock button on the remote control or when certain conditions are met.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock the doors. The turn signal lamps flash twice to confirm that your vehicle has unlocked.

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Note: *If your vehicle is equipped with double locking, the doors cannot be opened from the inside. See* ***Double Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control*** *(page 50).*

Note: *You can also lock and unlock your vehicle without using the remote control. See* ***Keyless Entry*** *(page 54).*

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

Unlocking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key blade into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Note: *When you unlock the driver door with the key blade all the other doors are unlocked.*

Locking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key blade into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: *When you lock your vehicle with the key blade all doors are locked.*

DOUBLE LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

Note: *You do not have to activate double locking.*

Deactivating Double Locking

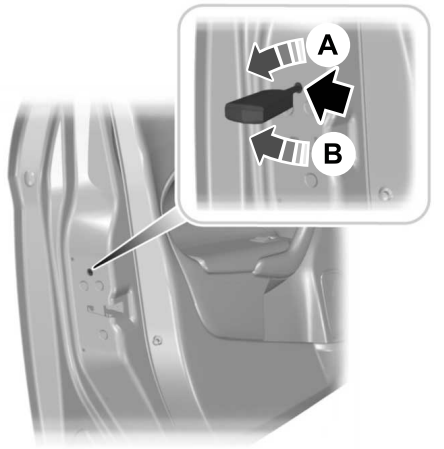
- Press the lock button on the remote control twice within two seconds.
- Touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle twice within two seconds.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



INDIVIDUALLY UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

Locking the Doors



If the central locking function does not operate, individually lock the front passenger door and the rear doors using the key blade.

Note: *Remove the grommet from the key blade lock mechanism.*

Left-Hand Side Doors

Turn the key counterclockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side Doors

Turn the key clockwise to lock.

Note: *Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to repair the central locking function.*

Unlocking the Doors

If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then individually unlock all other doors by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: *When the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be individually locked until the central locking function has been repaired.*

Note: *If the vehicle is double locked, you cannot open the doors by pulling the interior door handles.*

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



Press the button to lock or unlock all doors.

Note: *If the vehicle has been locked from outside with the vehicle key, the power lock control is not activated.*

When you lock the vehicle using the power lock control the indicator lamp on the control lights up yellow when all doors are closed and locked.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *The anti-theft alarm is not activated and the turn signal lamps do not flash.*

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

You can program the unlocking function in the touchscreen so that only the driver or passenger door unlocks, or both doors unlock on one side of the vehicle.

Note: *If you want to unlock all the doors, press the unlock button on the remote control again within three seconds.*

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that recalls the last unlock status when you stop your vehicle.

If you unlocked:

- Only the driver door before starting your vehicle, then only the driver door unlocks when you stop.
- The driver side doors before starting your vehicle, then the driver side doors unlock when you stop.
- All the doors before starting your vehicle, then all the doors unlock when you stop.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock operates if any of the following occurs:

- When you apply the electric parking brake and switch the vehicle off.
- You pull the interior door handle while the vehicle is stationary.

AUTOLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that centrally locks your vehicle doors when driving.

AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The vehicle is switched on.
- The vehicle reaches a speed greater than 15 km/h (9 mph).

MISLOCK

HOW DOES MISLOCK WORK

If you try to lock your vehicle when leaving your key inside the vehicle but you do not have another key outside, all the doors lock. A few seconds later the doors open as previously programmed in the touchscreen.

Note: *The turn signal lamps flash four times to indicate that your vehicle has not locked.*

AUTORELOCK

HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors. The doors lock and the alarm return to their previous state.

Note: *Autorelock does not work when you unlocked the vehicle with a key blade.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the vehicle on and remains on if any door, the hood or the liftgate is open.

DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why do the turn signals not flash when the vehicle is locked?

- Make sure all the doors, the liftgate and the hood are closed.

Why does the vehicle lock itself automatically after a short period of time?

- The vehicle was unlocked but no doors or the liftgate were opened.
- The vehicle was not switched on.

Why does the key inside the vehicle not function?

- The key inside the vehicle is disabled if the vehicle is locked from the outside with another key. You need to reactivate the key inside the vehicle by pressing the unlock button on the key fob.

How can I lock the vehicle if the airbags opened during an accident?

- Switch the vehicle off, open the driver door and close it again. Lock the vehicle.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m (3 ft) from the front door handles or the liftgate.

The system could not function if:

- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press ***Exterior***.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press ***Opening and closing***.
6. Make the required adjustments.

Temporarily Disabling the Keyless Entry System

You can temporarily disable the Keyless Entry System by doing the following:

1.  Press the button on the remote control.
2. Touch the lock sensor on the exterior door handle within 5 seconds.

Note: *All turn signals flash once.*

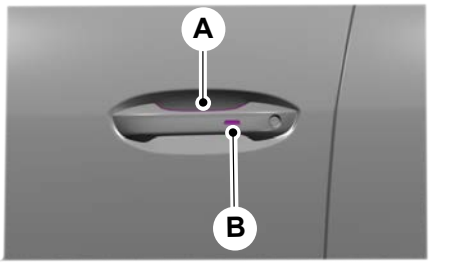
The Keyless Entry System is temporarily disabled.

Note: *To check Keyless Entry System deactivation, wait 10 seconds after the procedure and pull the door handle again. You should not be able to open your vehicle.*

It is only possible to unlock your vehicle with the remote control. Next time you unlock your vehicle, the Keyless Entry System is enabled again.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors



A. Unlock sensor
B. Lock sensor

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

The unlock sensor is at the back of the exterior front door handle.

Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash.

Note: *Do not touch the lock sensor on the outer surface of the door handle.*

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over you can lock the doors again, if the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Note: *The vehicle also unlocks when you approach it with a valid key in your pocket, if the settings are enabled.*

Locking the Doors

Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The direction indicators flash.

Note: *The vehicle also locks when you walk away from it with a valid key in your pocket, if the settings are enabled.*

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the passive key not work?

- The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch on your vehicle using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

HOW DOES EASY ENTRY AND EXIT WORK

This feature moves the driver or passenger seat rearward when you switch your vehicle off. The driver or passenger seat returns to its previous position when you switch your vehicle on.

SWITCHING EASY ENTRY AND EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4.  Press this icon.
5. Press ***Interior***.
6. Press ***Seats***.
7. Make the required Easy Entry and Exit adjustment for Driver or Passenger seat.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

Lift the switch on the driver door.

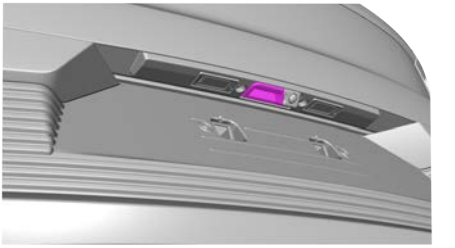
Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Always keep the liftgate closed while the vehicle is in motion.*

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Unlock the liftgate using a valid vehicle key.



2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate activates the system's obstacle detection feature and stops the power operation or reverses its direction, replicates a strut failure, or damages mechanical components.*

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key to open the liftgate.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

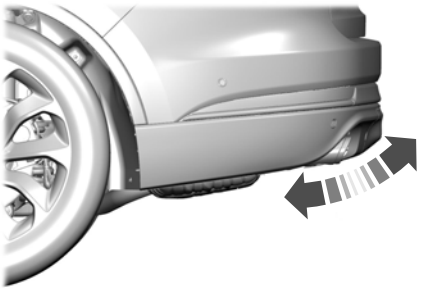
Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

OPENING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the valid vehicle key within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle facing the liftgate.
2. Move your foot in a single-kick motion without pausing under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate opens.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones

The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pulling the liftgate activates the system's obstacle detection feature and stops the power operation or reverses its direction, replicates a strut failure, or damages mechanical components.*

Note: *Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains, charging cables or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the valid vehicle key away from the rear bumper detection area.*

Note: *If the valid vehicle key is located close to the liftgate, the hands-free liftgate function can sometimes be operated accidentally, causing the liftgate to open. For example, when sweeping underneath the rear bumper, if a powerful jet of water or steam is directed at the bumper, or if maintenance and repair work is carried out in the area around the rear bumper.*

SWITCHING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press the vehicle icon.
3. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
4. You can switch the hands-free liftgate on or off.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *Always make sure that there are no valid vehicle keys left unattended in the operating range of the liftgate.*

Note: *Always switch off the hands-free liftgate function in the touchscreen before any maintenance or repair work is carried out.*

Note: *Always switch off the hands-free liftgate function in the touchscreen before cleaning the vehicle.*

SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

1.  Open the liftgate and press the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height. The liftgate must be at least half open.

Note: *Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.*

2. Press and hold the button on the liftgate until the hazard flashers flash and a tone sounds confirming programming is complete.

Note: *You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.*

3. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

Note: *The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.*

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before opening or closing the liftgate.

 While the vehicle is on, pull the button upwards on the driver door until the liftgate is closed.

Note: *Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Before opening or closing the liftgate, check whether there is enough clearance to open or close the liftgate, for example in garages.*

Note: *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



Press and release the liftgate button in the open liftgate. A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.

Note: *Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Before opening or closing the liftgate, check whether there is enough clearance to open or close the liftgate, for example in garages.*

Note: *Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

WARNING: Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Press and hold the button for a few seconds. The vehicle key must also be within operating range.

Note: *Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

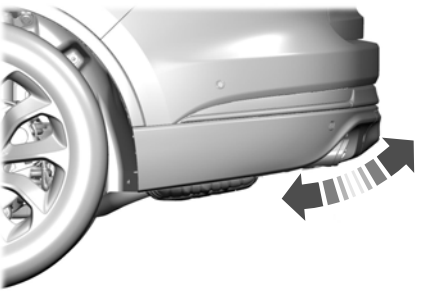
Note: *Before opening or closing the liftgate, check whether there is enough clearance to open or close the liftgate, for example in garages.*

Note: *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

CLOSING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

Make sure you have the valid vehicle key within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle facing the liftgate.
2. Move your foot in a single-kick motion without pausing under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



3. The liftgate closes.

Note: *A tone sounds when the liftgate begins to close.*

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free feature:

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

Detection Zones

The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

Note: *Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing the liftgate activates the system's obstacle detection feature and stops the power operation or reverses its direction, replicates a strut failure, or damages mechanical components.*

Note: *Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains, charging cables or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the valid vehicle key away from the rear bumper detection area.*

STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

You can stop the liftgate movement by pressing any of the liftgate control buttons or moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

Note: *Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.*

LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

Closing the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

Note: *To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.*

Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS



Why are opening and closing the liftgate problematic?

Make sure the liftgate is free of obstacle. Opening the liftgate requires more effort. The drive switches off automatically in order to prevent overheating if the driver operates the liftgate frequently within a short period of time. As the drive cools off, opening and closing the liftgate require more effort. Make sure the transmission is in park (P). Make sure the hands-free liftgate is enabled. If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

Why do all turn signals flash four times?

The key is still in the vehicle. Remove the key and lock the vehicle.

Why is the liftgate stiff?

Due to outside temperatures below freezing point, opening the liftgate requires more effort. Open the liftgate manually.

LIFTGATE VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Explorer Opening and Closing the Power Liftgate Video Link

For more information scan here:

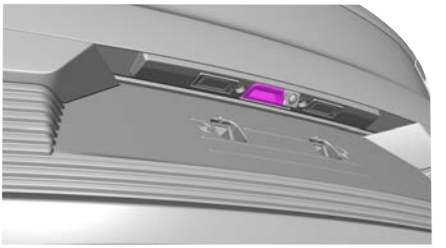
Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Unlock the liftgate using a valid vehicle key.
2. Press and release the liftgate control button.
3. Raise the liftgate.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key to unlock the liftgate.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



E291353

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

Note: *Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.*

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting your vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.*

HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch your vehicle off.

It disarms when you switch your vehicle on with a correctly coded key.

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If a halogen-light illuminated bicycle carrier or a trailer that is connected to the anti-theft alarm system is removed.
- If the 12 volt vehicle battery is disconnected.
- If the vehicle is lifted or towed.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the direction indicators flash for 5 minutes.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

Note: *If people or animals remain in the vehicle, deactivate the interior sensors to avoid false alarm.*

Note: *Open or partially open windows and lightweight items left in the vehicle can trigger false alarm.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

Note: *Deactivate inclination sensors to avoid false alarm if the vehicle is loaded onto another vehicle, transported or towed away, or parked in a car wash or a two-story building.*

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM (If Equipped)

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm sounder that has its own battery. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Arm the alarm by locking your vehicle.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.
- Grip the door handle with built in sensors, and a correctly coded key nearby.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security:

- All sensors.
- Perimeter sensing.

All Sensors

All sensors is the standard setting.

In all sensors, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with all sensors if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Perimeter Sensing

In perimeter sensing, the interior sensors and inclination sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Note: *When you arm the alarm in this mode, all the other sensors become active.*

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

You may switch off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm in the opening and closing menu. The interior sensors and the inclination sensor remain deactivated until the vehicle is locked again.

To switch the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm on or off:

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

3.  Press this icon.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press ***Opening and closing***.
6. Switch ***Interior monitoring*** on or off.

To avoid false alarms, deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm in the following situations:

- If any people or animals remain inside the vehicle.
- When loading the vehicle onto another vehicle, or towing it.
- When you park the vehicle in or on something that can move.

 You can deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm by pressing the lock button on the remote control or touching the sensor on the outside of the door handle again in two seconds after locking the vehicle.

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

You may switch off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm in the opening and closing menu. The interior sensors and the inclination sensor remain deactivated until the vehicle is locked again.

To switch the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm on or off:

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.

3.  Press this icon.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press ***Opening and closing***.
6. Switch ***Interior monitoring*** on or off.

To avoid false alarms, deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm in the following situations:

- If any people or animals remain inside the vehicle.
- When loading the vehicle onto another vehicle, or towing it.
- When you park the vehicle in or on something that can move.

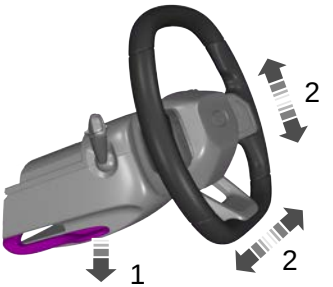
 You can deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm by pressing the lock button on the remote control or touching the sensor on the outside of the door handle again in two seconds after locking the vehicle. In this case you activate only the central lock.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

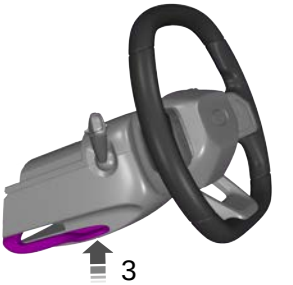
ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 117).*



1. Push down the lever.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



3. Push the lever up firmly to its normal position.

Note: *Make sure the lever is flush with the steering column trim, otherwise it can accidentally move while the vehicle is in motion.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF

Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off on the Steering Wheel



Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Press the button on the steering wheel to switch the heated steering wheel on, adjust the temperature setting and switch it off.

Note: *The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.*

Note: *The most recent temperature setting is switched on automatically, when you restart your vehicle within approximately 10 minutes.*

You can also activate the steering wheel heating in the touchscreen.


You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off on the Touchscreen

1. 
Press this icon.
2. 
Press this icon.
3. 
Press this icon to switch the steering wheel heating on at the highest temperature setting.
4. To adjust the temperature setting, press the same icon repeatedly.
5. To switch the heated steering wheel off press the icon until the symbol is colored gray.

Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off Automatically at the Start of the Journey.

1. 
Press this icon to access the Air conditioning menu.
2. 
Press this icon.
3. Select the preferred heated steering wheel setting from the dropdown menu.

Note: *Once the vehicle is ready to drive, the steering wheel heating is automatically switched on depending on the outside temperature.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WIPERS

WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

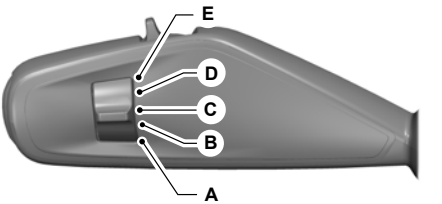
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 72). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 72). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 73).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



A	Windshield wipers off.
B	Autowipers on (low sensitivity).
C	Autowipers on (high sensitivity).
D	Low speed wipe.
E	High speed wipe.

Use the rotary control to operate the windshield wipers.

Note: *When you turn autowipers on, the wipers operate based on the rain sensor. You can set the sensitivity of the rain sensor in two stages. See* ***Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor*** *(page 71).*

Note: *Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers and autowipers completely off before entering a car wash.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Single-wipe function



Push the button briefly to activate single-wipe. Hold it longer to wipe more quickly. Release the button to switch off single-wipe.

Note: *The button has two positions. If you push it deeper to its second position, it activates the windshield washer system.*

AUTOWIPERS

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

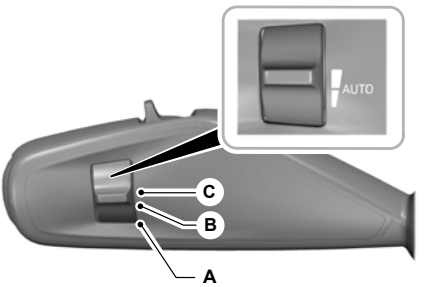
Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press ***Exterior***.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press ***Wipers***.
6. Make the required adjustments.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



A	Windshield wipers off.
B	Autowipers on (low sensitivity).
C	Autowipers on (high sensitivity).

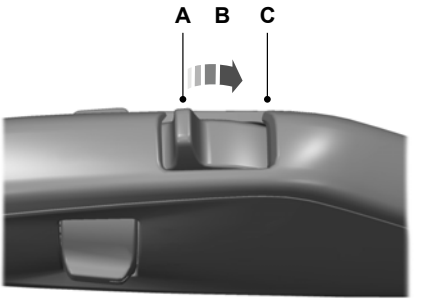
Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor in two stages.

With the sensitivity level you can adjust the frequency of the wipes depending on the rain intensity.

Note: *Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



A Rear window wiper and washer off.

B Rear window wiper on (intermittent wipe).

C Rear window washer on.


Push the switch to the middle position to operate the rear window wiper. It wipes the window in short intervals. To switch off the rear window wiper, push the switch back to the left.

REVERSE WIPE

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1. 
Press this icon.
2. 
Press this icon.
3. Press ***Exterior***.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press ***Wipers***.
6. Make the required adjustments.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

It is possible to replace the front wiper blades in parking position or you can place the wiper arms in service position. You can activate the service position from the touchscreen's wiper menu.

Make sure you powered your vehicle off before beginning the following procedure.

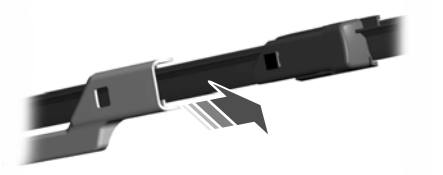
1. Fully lift the wiper arm from the windshield.

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



2. Press the wiper blade locking button.



3. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.*



2. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

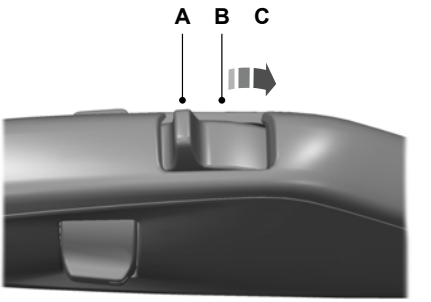
USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Press the button deeper to its second position and hold it there to operate the windshield washer. Release the button to switch off the windshield washer.

Note: *A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid.*

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



A Rear window wiper and washer off.

B Rear window wiper on (intermittent wipe).

C Rear window washer on.

Push the switch all the way to the right and hold it to operate the rear window washer. Release the switch to turn off the rear window washer. If you also want to turn off the rear window wiper, push the switch all the way to the left.

Rear view camera cleaning system

The rear view camera cleaning system works in conjunction with the rear window washer. If the view from the camera remains obscured after it has been cleaned several times, the camera lens must be cleaned manually. See **Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors** (page 298).

ADDING WASHER FLUID

1. Open the hood.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

2. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
3. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 329).
4. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

WIPERS AND WASHERS VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Explorer Replacing the Front and Rear Wiper Blades Video Link

For more information scan here:



WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.



Illuminates if there is a fault and the wipers do not wipe.

Switch your vehicle off and on again to reset the system.

If the warning lamp continues to illuminate and the wipers do not wipe, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

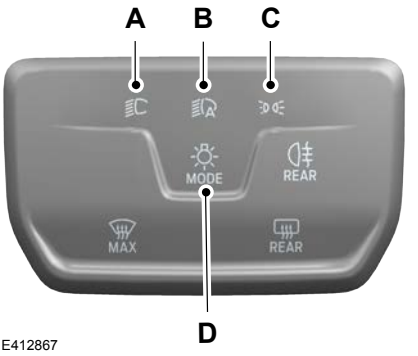
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 72). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 72). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 73).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



A Headlamps on.

B Autolamps on.

C Parking lamps on.

D Mode button.

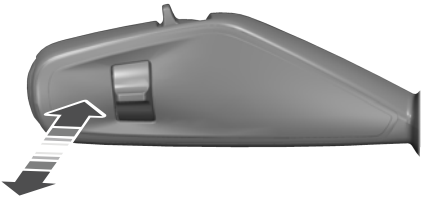


Press the button to make a selection.

Note: *The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.*

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS





Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on. The indicator illuminates blue in the instrument cluster.

Pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: *Continuous activation only with headlamps on.*

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE LED HEADLAMPS

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Exterior***.
5. Press ***Headlamps***.

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD - VEHICLES WITH: LED PROJECTOR HEADLAMPS

The headlamps are designed to support the left or right-hand side driving. You do not need to take any action.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE LED HEADLAMPS

Your vehicle has a dynamic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL HEADLAMP LEVELING

WARNING: Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

WARNING: The light cone should always be adjusted to the load level of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Exterior***.
5. Press ***Headlamps***.
6. Drag the slider and make the required adjustment.

Note: *Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.*

Note: *Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.*

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Parking Lamps On

 It illuminates when you switch the parking lamps on.

Lamps Off

 It only illuminates in the instrument cluster when you switch the lamps off and do not exceed a vehicle speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) or a distance of 100 m (109 yd).

Exterior Bulb Failure

 It illuminates when an exterior lamp has failed.

HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time can take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

AUTOLAMPS

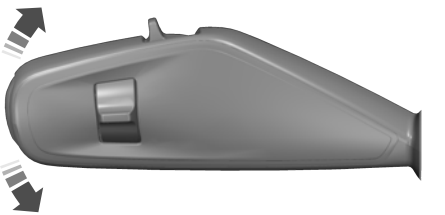
WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



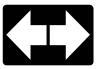
Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.*

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes green when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: *An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.*

SWITCHING THE PARKING LAMPS ON AND OFF

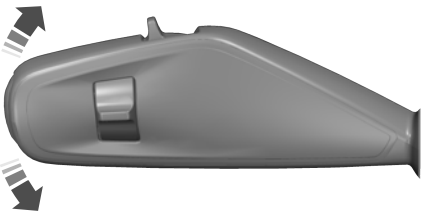
To switch both sides on or off:

1. Switch your vehicle off.
2. 

Press the button repeatedly to switch the parking lamps on or off in the instrument cluster.

To switch one side on or off:

1. Switch your vehicle off.



2. 
Push the lever up or down to switch the parking lamps on.
3. Move the lever back to a neutral position to switch the lamps off.

Note: *Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF

WARNING: The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

Note: *You cannot activate or deactivate the daytime running lamps manually if your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).*

USING ALL WEATHER LAMPS



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the lamps on or off.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. 

Press the button on the lighting control to select the headlamps or autolamps.

Note: *When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the rear fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

2. 

Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: *Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.*

Note: *The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.*

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator


It illuminates yellow when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

USING THE ENTRY AND EXIT LIGHTING

Entry and exit lighting automatically turns on when autolamps is on and you get in or out of your vehicle in darkness.

Entry Lighting

Unlock your vehicle to switch entry lighting on.

To switch entry lighting off do any of the following:

- Lock your vehicle.
- Set the exterior lighting control to lamps off.
- Switch your vehicle on.

Note: *Entry lighting turns off automatically after the set duration time.*

Exit Lighting

Switch your vehicle off to switch exit lighting on.

Set the exterior lighting control to lamps off to switch exit lighting off.

Note: *Exit lighting turns off automatically after the set duration time.*

Adjusting the Entry and Exit Lighting

1. 
Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2. 
Press this icon.
3. 
Press this icon.
4. Press ***Exterior***.
5. Press ***Comfort light***.
6. Set the required duration time.

Note: *The entry and exit lighting does not function if you drag the slider to zero.*

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

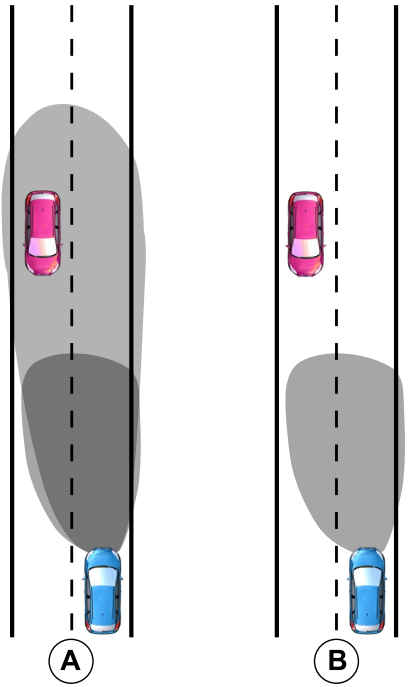
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



A Without automatic high beam control.

B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.*

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2. 

Press the button on the lighting control to select autolamps.
3. Push the lever away from you to switch the automatic high beam control on.
4. Push the lever forward again to switch the automatic high beam control off.

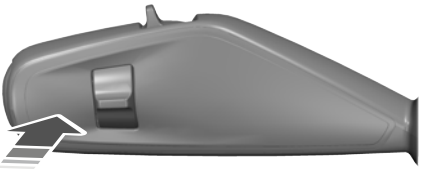
Note: *You can also adjust automatic high beam control settings on the touchscreen.*

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates white to confirm when the system is ready to assist. Illuminates blue when the high beam is activated.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

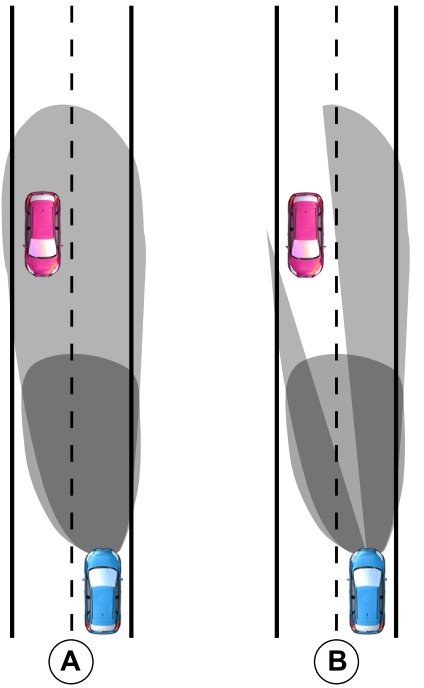
Message	Details
Fault: automatic headlamps	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Glare free high beam control enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.



A Without glare free high beam control.

B With glare free high beam control.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

The system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

SWITCHING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2. 

Press the button on the lighting control to select autolamps.
3. Push the lever away from you to switch the glare free high beam control on.
4. Push the lever forward again to switch the glare free high beam control off.

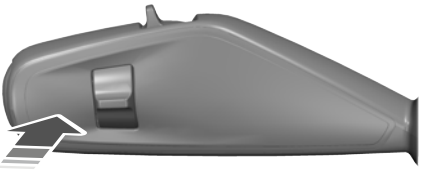
Note: *You can also adjust glare free high beam control settings on the touchscreen.*

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates white to confirm when the system is ready to assist. Illuminates blue when the high beam is activated.

OVERRIDING GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

GLARE FREE HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Fault: automatic headlamps	Displays when there is a fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

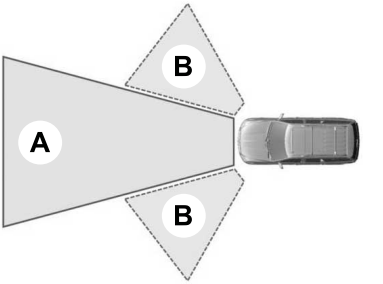
Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING WORK

Speed Dependent Lamps

Provides additional light on the road depending on your vehicle speed and steering wheel input.



A Standard low beam.
B Additional lighting.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Fault: auto high beam	Displays when there is a fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Auto high beam: please clean the windscreen.	Clean the windscreen. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



1. Press the button to switch all of the interior lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Note: *Press the lamp lens to switch the front interior lamps off before switching your vehicle off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

Note: *You can dim the light by keeping your finger on the lamp.*

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Note: *If you switch all of the interior lamps on, you cannot individually switch the rear lamps off.*

Note: *You can dim the light by keeping your finger on the lamp.*

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF





Press the button to switch the interior lamp function off.

The interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch your vehicle off.

Note: *If you switch your vehicle off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.*

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Interior***.
5. Press ***Interior lighting***.
6. Drag the slider left or right.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon to switch ambient lighting off.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press and drag the slider to adjust the ambient lighting brightness.

 If you press this icon ambient lighting color changes depending on the selected drive mode.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



If you press this icon you can adjust the ambient lighting color and the brightness separately.



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

INTERIOR LIGHTING VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Explorer Interior Lighting Video Link

For more information scan here:

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Front Windows

Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Rear Windows

REAR Press the button to activate the rear windows. It illuminates when the rear windows are activated.

Note: *If you press the button again or you do not operate the rear windows within a short period of time, the front windows are reactivated.*

Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: *The power windows operate when the vehicle is on, and for several minutes after you switch the vehicle off or until you open a front door.*

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Open and Close

If you have disconnected the 12 volt battery while the windows were not fully closed, you must reset the one-touch memory separately for each window.

1. Start your vehicle.
2. Pull and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed and keep it held for a few seconds.
3. Release the switch then pull and hold it again for a few seconds.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can open and close all the windows simultaneously.

USING GLOBAL OPENING

Using the Remote Control

1. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control to open the windows.
2. Release the button to stop global opening.

Note: *You can adjust global opening settings on the touchscreen.*

Using a Window Control Switch

You can operate the windows simultaneously by using the window control switches on the inside of the driver door when the vehicle is on.



Press and hold the button until it flashes to activate global opening and closing.



Press either of the two window control switches to open the windows.

Note: *If you do not operate the windows within a short period of time, global opening and closing is disabled.*

USING GLOBAL CLOSING

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Using the Remote Control

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control to close the windows.
2. Release the button to stop global closing.

Using a Window Control Switch

You can operate the windows simultaneously by using the window control switches on the inside of the driver door when the vehicle is on.



Press and hold the button until it flashes to activate global opening and closing.



Pull either of the two window control switches to close the windows.

Note: *If you do not operate the windows within a short period of time, global opening and closing is disabled.*

Using the Door Handle

1. Place your finger on the locking sensor in the door handle to close the windows.
2. Remove your finger from the sensor to stop the windows.

Note: *The remote control must be within 1.5 m (1.6 yd) from the door handles.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *Bounce-back is on during global closing. See* ***Window Bounce-Back*** *(page 91).*

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Explorer Global Opening and Closing Video Link

For more information scan here:



WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift the window control switch within five seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If you have disconnected the 12 volt battery while the windows were not fully closed, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Start your vehicle.
2. Pull and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed and keep it held for a few seconds.
3. Release the switch then pull and hold it again for a few seconds.

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

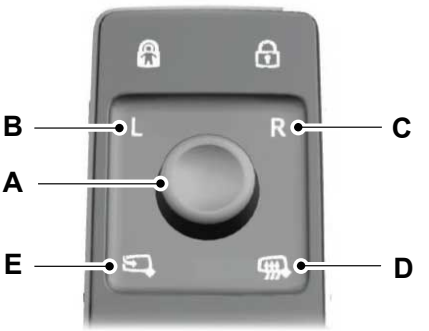
Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

Note: *A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



A	Mirror adjustment control.
B	Left-hand mirror position.
C	Right-hand mirror position.
D	Exterior mirror heating position.
E	Power fold position.

Note: *The symbol of the selected position illuminates.*

Mirror Settings

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press ***Exterior***.
4. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
5. Press ***Mirrors***.
6. Make the required adjustments.

Note: *When you select to adjust the mirrors simultaneously, rotate the control on the driver door to the left-hand mirror position to adjust the mirrors.*

You can save the front passenger exterior mirror position for reversing:

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2. Rotate the control on the driver door to the passenger-side mirror position.
3. Shift into reverse.
4. Adjust the front passenger exterior mirror.
5. Shift into neutral.
6. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: *The settings are saved for the key you were using. You can activate the settings when your vehicle is on by selecting the passenger-side mirror position and shifting into reverse.*

Memory Mirrors

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Saving a Preset Position** (page 128).

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

When locking or unlocking your vehicle from outside, the exterior mirrors fold and unfold automatically if the mirror adjustment control is not in the power fold position.

Note: *You can adjust this function on the touchscreen.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



Rotate the mirror adjustment control to the power fold position. The mirrors fold after a few seconds.

Note: *The mirrors remain folded until you rotate the mirror adjustment control to another position.*

EXTERIOR MIRRORS VIDEOS

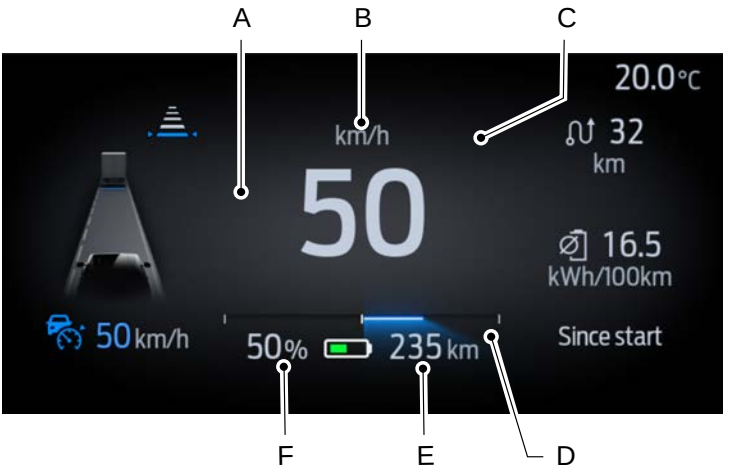
Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Explorer Folding the Exterior Mirrors Video Link

For more information scan here:



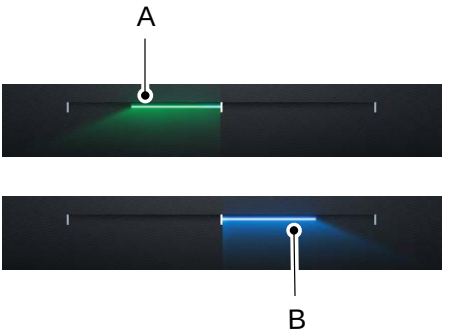
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW



A Instrument cluster display.
B Speedometer.
C Pop-up message display area.
D Power gauge.
E Vehicle driving range.
F High voltage battery gauge.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

POWER GAUGE



A Brake energy recuperation power.

B Traction power.

The bar displays the current drive power dynamically, either as brake energy recuperation power in green to the left or traction power in blue to the right.

Note: *The bar appears only when the vehicle is moving.*

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used when driving is affected by:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.
- Towing.

The available energy capacity in the high voltage battery is affected by cold temperatures and battery degradation. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 140).

Note: *It is normal for the vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage and battery temperature. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery. See* ***Maximizing Your Driving Range*** *(page 267).*

Note: *When you leave your vehicle unplugged, it periodically uses energy from the high voltage battery to recharge the 12-volt accessory battery, resulting in a reduced driving range.*

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY GAUGE

Displays the high voltage battery state of charge in the form of a percentage. A full fill or 100% charge represents the total amount of energy you can get from plugging your vehicle in.

The indicator is normally green. When you reach a low battery condition, the indicator illuminates amber. When the battery is depleted the indicator is red.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

12 V Battery Warning Lamp



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charge level or power supply error. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Adaptive Cruise Control Warning Lamp



It illuminates if the system is not available.

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Information System And Cross Traffic Alert Warning Lamp



If the system malfunctions, the warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Brake System Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the brake system fault or indicates a low brake fluid level. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Brake Pad Wear Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the brake pads have worn down to a predetermined limit. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates, safely stop your vehicle and switch your vehicle off.

Driver Alert System Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the system detects an issue, for example, the camera is blocked or misaligned. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Electric Park Brake Warning Lamp



It illuminates or flashes red when the electric parking brake requires service.

Exterior Bulb Failure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when an exterior lamp has failed.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

Health Risk Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the CO_2 concentration is too high. Open all windows immediately.

High Voltage Battery Warning Lamp



It illuminates green under normal conditions. If it illuminates amber, then the battery is low on charge.

Lane Centering Alert Warning Lamp



If it illuminates, you must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.

Lane Keeping System Warning Lamp



It could illuminate when you switch the system off. If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Limited Performance Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle has limited performance due to a cold or hot battery. Drive with caution. Keep your vehicle connected to a charging system when not in use to maintain battery temperature.

Outside Temperature Warning Lamp



If it illuminates, drive with particular care.

Powertrain Warning Lamp



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist Warning Lamp



It illuminates if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you. It could illuminate red if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small. It illuminates yellow when you switch the system off or if the system is not available.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Safety Alert Warning Lamp



It illuminates to indicate a potential or imminent safety risk. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Steering System Failure Warning Lamp



If it illuminates, a fault is present within the vehicle's steering system. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Stop Safely Warning Lamp



It illuminates if an electrical component requires service or a failure that causes your vehicle to shut down or enter into a limited operating mode. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Warning Lamp



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Vehicle Plugged In Warning Lamp



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 203).

Auto Hold Indicator



Illuminates gray when the system is on.

Illuminates green when the system is active and holds your vehicle at a standstill.

Automatic High Beam Control On Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Blind Spot Information System Indicator



When the system detects a vehicle, the indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signal indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the indicator flashes.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Cross Traffic Alert Indicator



When the system detects an approaching vehicle a tone sounds, the indicator illuminates and arrows appear in the instrument cluster display, or the touchscreen to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Cruise Control Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Driver Alert System Indicator



If it illuminates, the driver alert system advises you to take a rest.

Eco Mode Indicator



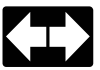
It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Hazard Flasher Indicator



It flashes when you switch the hazard flashers on.

Heated Steering Wheel Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the heated steering wheel on.

High Beam Headlamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

Individual Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Speed Limiter Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the system on.

Lamps On Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the side and rear lamps on.

Lane Keeping Aid Indicator



It illuminates in the information display when you switch the system on and Aid Mode or Alert and Aid Mode are selected.

Lane Centering Indicator



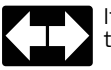
Illuminates when you switch lane centering on.

Traction Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Turn Signal Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal indicators on.

Normal Mode Indicator



It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Ready to Drive Indicator

READY Illuminates when you have switched on your vehicle and it is ready to drive. A corresponding message may appear stating ready to drive.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator


It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Sport Mode Indicator


It illuminates when the drive mode is selected.

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator


Flashes yellow during operation. Shortly illuminates when you switch your vehicle on. If it does not illuminate when you switch your vehicle on, or continuously illuminates, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

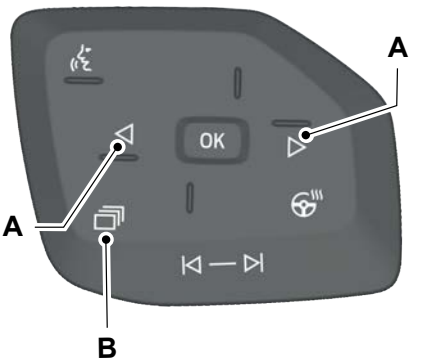
Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

WARNING: If the instrument cluster does not display, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Do not use the vehicle until it has been repaired. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



A Left and right arrow buttons.
B View button.

Left and Right Arrow Buttons

Press to select one of the views.

View Button

Press to get a simplified view. If you press again, it displays the last selected view.

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

The digital instrument cluster can display different views. Depending on the selected view, some data is hidden.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Welcome View



It displays general vehicle status information such as mileage, battery state of charge, odometer and vehicle driving range.

Home View



It displays information including driving assistance, speed, trip summary or navigation data, and general information.

Driver Assistance View



It displays the status of the active driver assistance system and general information.

Trip Summary View



It displays the trip summary and general information.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Navigation View



It displays navigation data and general information.

Setting Views

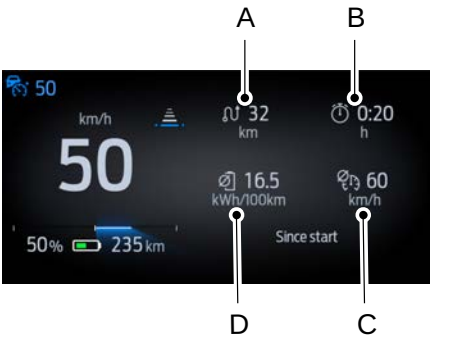


Press these buttons to select the preferred view.



TRIP SUMMARY

Depending on the selected view, the trip summary displays on the instrument cluster display.



A Trip distance.

B Trip time.

C Average speed.

D Average power consumption.

Trip Summary Views

The digital instrument cluster can display three different trip summary views. Each view displays different values.







Press the OK button on the steering wheel to select the preferred view.

Note: *If you press the OK button for longer than one second, it resets the long-term data.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHANGING THE LANGUAGE

You can change the language using the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press ***Language***.
4. Select a language.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

You can change the measurement unit using the touchscreen.

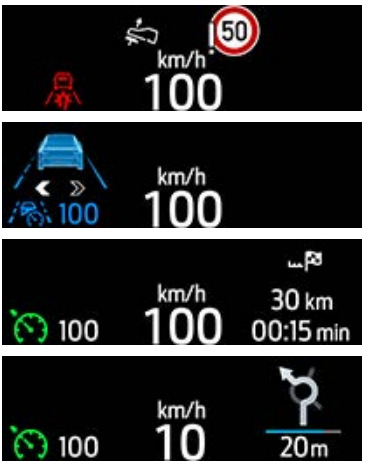
1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press ***Units***.
4. Select a measurement unit.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS THE HEAD UP DISPLAY

The system displays information on the windshield in your field of vision, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road. You can select which information the system displays.

HEAD UP DISPLAY OVERVIEW



The system can display different vehicle information depending on the selected data such as speed, navigation, driving assistance and navigation trip summary.

SWITCHING THE HEAD UP DISPLAY ON AND OFF

You can switch the system on and off on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. **Interior**.
4. **Head-up display**.
5. Drag the slider to the active position to switch the system on.
6. To switch the system off, drag the slider to the inactive position.

HEAD UP DISPLAY SETTINGS

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. **Interior**.
4. **Head-up display**.
5. Make the required adjustments or select the preferred information to display.

Adjusting the height and rotation

You can adjust the projected image position to your individual seating position.

1. Assume the correct seating position.
2. Press **Position**.
3. Adjust the desired position and angle of the projected image using the function buttons.

Additional settings

You can configure additional settings for the head-up display such as:

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

- Brightness
- Color scheme
- Information: Driver Assistance, Navigation, Road signs, Trip data

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start the climatization in your vehicle to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

REMOTE START PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Power points power up during remote start.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work if:

- The vehicle is switched on.
- The vehicle battery is below the minimum operating voltage.

Note: *To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See* ***Enabling and Disabling the Modem*** *(page 333).*

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE

Use the FordPass App to remotely start the pre-conditioning of the vehicle.

Note: *The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the vehicle on and drive your vehicle.*

Note: *A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. To reset the restart procedure switch the vehicle on, then off.*

Note: *If your vehicle is plugged in during remote start it uses energy from your charging source.*

Use the FordPass App to remotely switch the pre-conditioning off.

REMOTE START SETTINGS

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. You can adjust the cabin temperature, the heated seats and heated steering wheel.

Note: *These settings also apply to selected departure times.*

 Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF


Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.


Press this icon.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF


Press this icon on the touchscreen to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press this icon on the touchscreen.

Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Note: *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

Stationary Air Conditioning

When switching your vehicle off

When you activate this feature, the air conditioning system remains active for about 30 minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

1. Switch on the electric parking brake and unbuckle the driver seatbelt.
2. The Exit menu appears on the touchscreen.
3. 
Press this icon.

When unlocking your vehicle

When you activate this feature, the air conditioning system turns on automatically when you unlock your vehicle.

You can activate the feature on the touchscreen.

1. 
Press this icon.
2. 
Press this icon.
3. 
Press this icon and enable the feature.

Note: *These features are only available if the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged or the vehicle is plugged into a charging source.*

Note: *The driving range of the vehicle reduces if you operate stationary air conditioning without plugging your vehicle into a charging source.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press this button on the instrument panel next to the steering wheel.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *You can also adjust this function on the touchscreen through the climate control menu or add it as a favorite icon to the climate bar on the home screen.*

Note: *If you select recirculated air, maximum defrost switches off automatically.*

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon.

Note: *When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.*

Note: *In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press this button on the instrument panel next to the steering wheel.

Note: *You can also adjust this function on the touchscreen through the climate control menu or add it as a favorite icon to the climate bar on the home screen.*

Note: *Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

1.  Press this icon to access the climate controls.
2.  Adjust the blower motor speed using the **+** or **-** buttons.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF



Rotate the mirror adjustment control to the heating position. The heating starts after a few seconds.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.*

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Adjust the temperature using the **+** or **-** buttons on either side of the climate control to set the temperature for that side.


You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents


Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.


Press this icon.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents


Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.


Press this icon.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents


Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.


Press this icon.

Comfort

The Comfort functions remain on for a short time.

1. 
Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.
2. Press ***Comfort***.


Press this icon to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.


Press this icon to direct fresh air from the outside into the vehicle interior.


Press this icon to direct cold air into the footwell air vents.


Press this icon to direct warm air into the footwell air vents.


Press this icon to direct warm air into the steering wheel area.

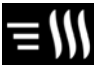
Note: *When you press this icon, the steering wheel heating switches on automatically and sets level depending on the ambient temperature.*

Note: *When you press this icon and the steering wheel heating is already on, it remains active and sets level depending on the ambient temperature.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



Press this icon to increase interior cooling for a short period of time.



Press this icon to increase interior heating for a short period of time.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon to select auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

Auto Mode Indicator	Description
Low	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Medium	The blower motor speed is moderate.
High	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF

The default setting is on.



To switch dual mode off, press this icon on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press this icon.

Note: *When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.*

Note: *Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.*

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Use of the climate system will reduce your vehicles driving range. Conserve battery charge by using climate control features when necessary.
- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press ***AUTO*** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. The blower motor speed may reduce until the air warms.
- If you press ***AUTO*** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

Press ***MAX A/C***.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press ***AUTO***.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22ºC (72ºF) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

AUTO AIR REFRESH

MANUALLY REFRESHING THE INTERIOR AIR



Press the button on the touchscreen.



Press this icon.

Note: *Climate control settings could change temporarily to help flow outside air into the cabin. You can change the blower motor speed to the settings you prefer.*

Note: *Recirculation may turn on and off automatically in various situations if the system detects poor quality air outside or inside your vehicle.*

AUTOMATICALLY REFRESHING THE INTERIOR AIR

If the cabin air recirculates continuously for a longer period of time, climate control settings could change temporarily to help flow outside air into the cabin.

Note: *Recirculation may turn on and off automatically in various situations if the system detects poor quality air outside or inside your vehicle.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

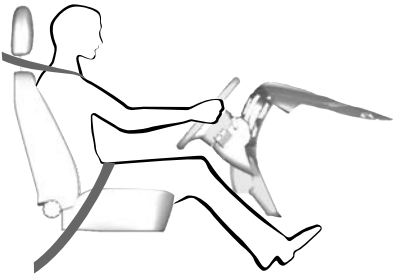
WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNING: Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

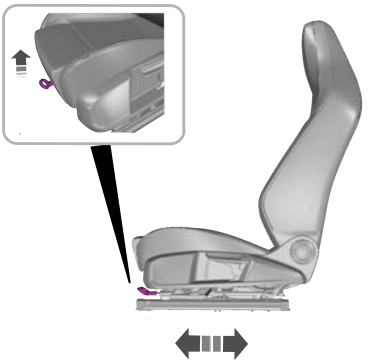
- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

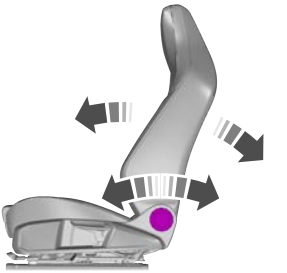
MANUAL SEATS

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

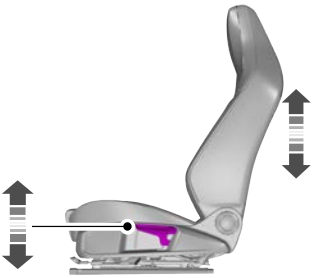


ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



POWER SEATS

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT 4-WAY HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

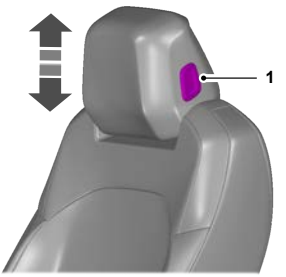
Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

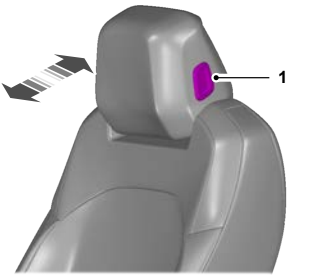
Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Adjusting the Height of the Head Restraint



1. Press the side button.
2. Push the head restraint upward or downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Moving the Head Restraint Forward and Backward

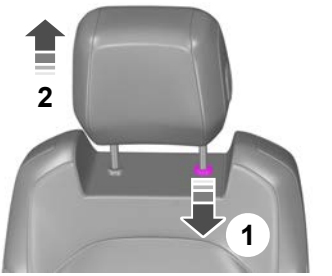


1. Press the side button.
2. Move the head restraint backward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

You can move the head restraint forward without pressing the side button.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT 4-WAY HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

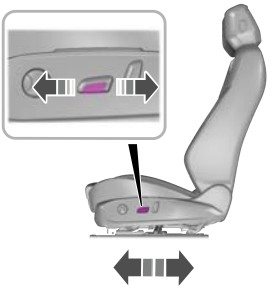


1. Press the ring around the head restraint to release it.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

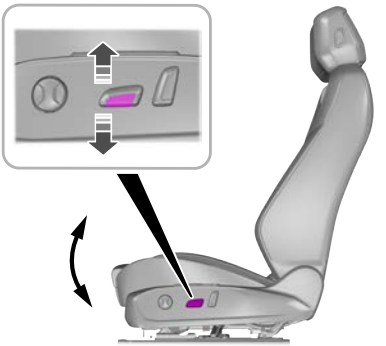
2. Remove the head restraint.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



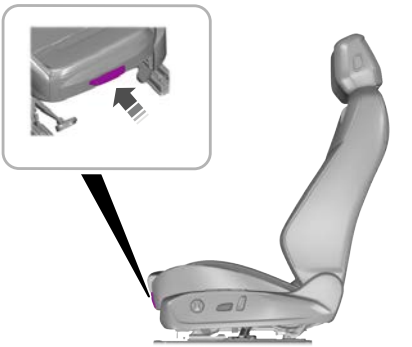
ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION

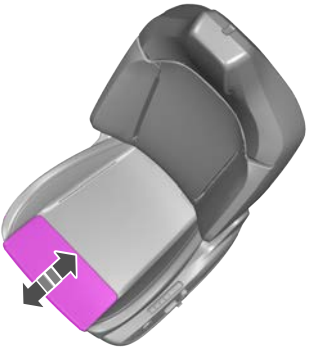
Adjusting the Seat Cushion Angle



Adjusting the Seat Cushion Length

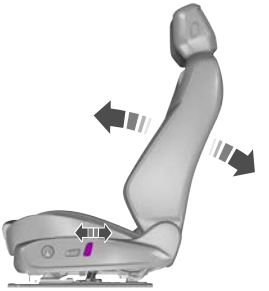
(If Equipped)



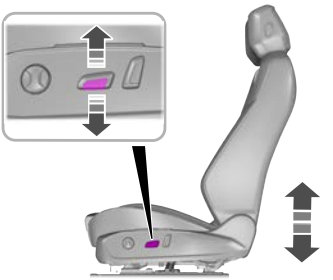


Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

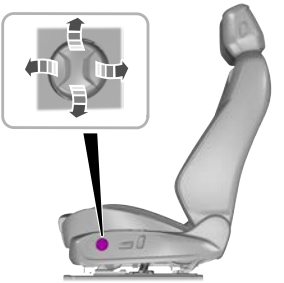
ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



MASSAGE SEATS

SWITCHING THE MASSAGE SEATS ON AND OFF



1. Press the massage button on the outside of the driver and passenger seats.

The massage function is switched off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

Note: *If you want to switch the massage function off before 10 minutes, press the massage button again.*

Note: *Switch the massage seats on and off only when the vehicle is stationary.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The heated seat button is on the climate control assembly.

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.



Repeatedly press the button to adjust the temperature. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

Note: *The heated seats may turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

FRONT SEATS VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Explorer Adjusting the Front Seat Video Link

For more information scan here:



Explorer Adjusting The Power Seat Video Link

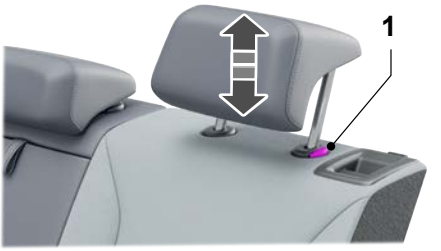
For more information scan here:

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



MANUAL SEATS

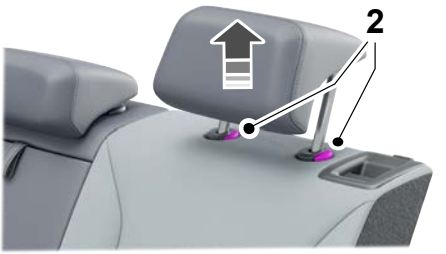
ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



1. Press the button to push the head restraint down.
2. You can pull the head restraint up without pressing the button.

Note: *The head restraint must engage securely into position.*

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



1. Push the head restraint all the way up.
2. Press and hold both release buttons to remove the head restraint.

FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: To prevent possible damage to the seat or seatbelts, make sure that the seatbelts are not fastened before folding the seatback.

WARNING: When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



1. Push the head restraint all the way down.
2. Pull the release button and fold the rear seat backrest forward at the same time.

Note: *The respective section of the rear seat backrest is unlocked when you can see the red indicator.*

3. Fold back the rear seat backrest and push it firmly into the catch until it engages securely into place.

Note: *The red indicator should no longer be visible.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.

WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Lift the seat backrest up to unfold it. Make sure the seat latch engages.

REAR SEATS VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Explorer Folding and Unfolding the Seat Backrest Video Link

For more information scan here:

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the vehicle off.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

If you switch off the vehicle a message appears in the touchscreen to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

The system also monitors when you open and close the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display and an audible warning sounds when you switch the vehicle off if any of the following occurs:

- You open or close a rear door.
- You switch the vehicle on within 10 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.

Note: *The audible warning can be switched on and off in the touchscreen.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Note: *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

You cannot switch the rear occupant alert system off, only the audible warning.

Note: *If you switch the audible warning off, a warning message still displays for a short period of time.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press ***Screen***.
4. Make the required adjustments.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS THE MEMORY FUNCTION

The memory function recalls the position of these features:

- Driver seat and power mirrors.
- Passenger seat.

MEMORY FUNCTION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.

WARNING: Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

LOCATING THE MEMORY FUNCTION BUTTONS



The memory function buttons are on the outside of the driver and passenger seats.

SAVING A PRESET POSITION

1. Power your vehicle on.
2. Adjust the front seats and exterior mirrors.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing





3. SET Press this button for longer than one second.
4. Within approximately 10 seconds, press the memory function button 1 or 2.
5. A tone sounds to confirm that the settings are saved.

RECALLING A PRESET POSITION

There are two possible ways to recall the preset position.

1. Vehicle is stationary, the vehicle is off and one door is open.
2. Press the desired memory button.

Note: *The adjustment process is cancelled, if one of the memory buttons is pressed again.*

Another way of recalling the Preset Position:

1. Vehicle is stationary, and the vehicle is on or all doors are closed.
2. Press the desired memory button, until the desired position has been reached.

Note: *The front passenger exterior mirror leaves the position saved for reversing automatically if the vehicle drives forwards at a speed of at least around 10 km/h (6 mph) or if you turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror out of the R position and into another position.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

The following is a list of potential USB port locations across all our vehicles. Some may not apply to your specific vehicle.

- In the center console.
- On the interior mirror base.
- In the center console stowage compartment.
- In the compartment under the center armrest.
- Behind the movable touchscreen.
- On the rear of the center console.


USB Ports marked with this icon are charge only ports that do not have data transfer capabilities.

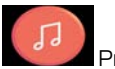

USB Ports marked with this icon have data transfer capabilities. These USB ports can also charge devices.

Note: *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

Note: *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.
2.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Sources***.
5. Press ***My media***.
6. Select your USB device.


Press to start or resume playback.

Note: *If USB is your previously selected source, music starts automatically.*


Press to pause playback.

Note: *Not all sources can be paused. Mute function is available for sources that cannot be paused.*


Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.


Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.


You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when the touchscreen is on.

Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is on.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

WARNING: If the electrical device gets too hot, switch off the device immediately and disconnect it from the socket.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

Note: *The 12V socket only works when the vehicle is switched on. If you move away from your vehicle, it switches off automatically after a short time.*

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlet could be in the following location:

- Inside the luggage compartment.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

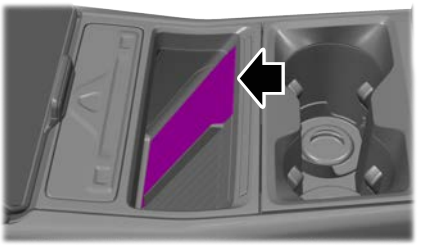
Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: *During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.*

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The charging area is on the center console, within the area shown.



Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Always place only one Qi-enabled mobile device with a maximum dimension of 80 mm (3.1 in) x 150 mm (5.9 in) on the center of the wireless charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

Note: *Qi-enabled mobile devices with larger dimensions, small flip phones, mobile phones with a protruding camera or a protective case containing metal may not be charged robustly.*

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging has been interrupted.

Note: *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

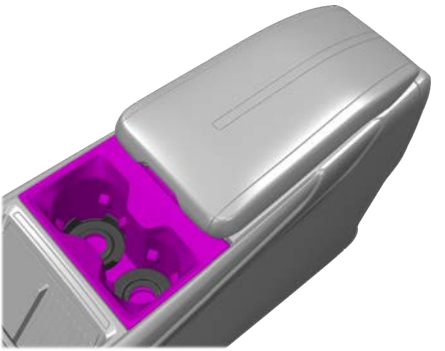
CUP HOLDERS

CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

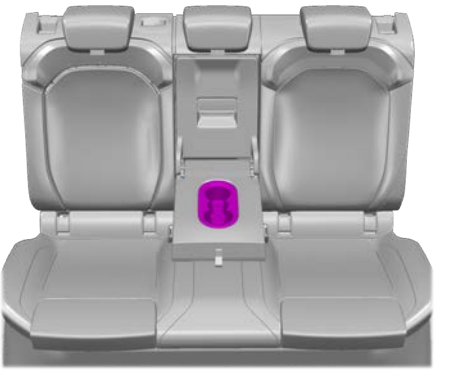
LOCATING THE CUP HOLDERS

Center Console



Flip the cup holder inserts over to accommodate shorter or longer cups.

Rear Seat Armrest



Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cup holder.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

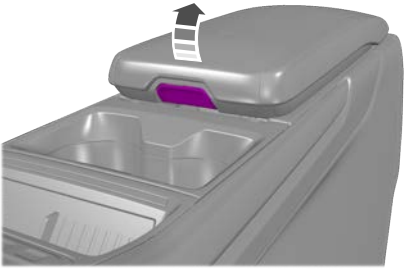
OPENING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT



Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

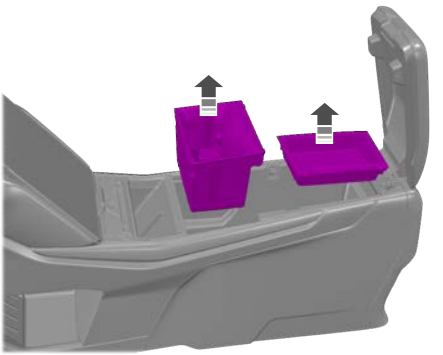
CENTER CONSOLE

OPENING THE CENTER CONSOLE

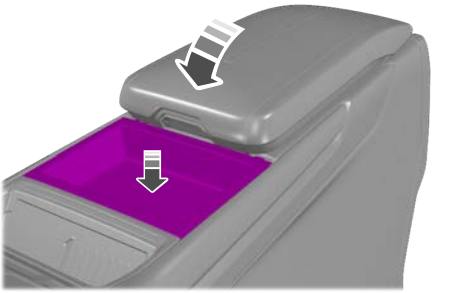


To open the center console push the button and lift up.

ADJUSTING THE CENTER CONSOLE



You can relocate the cup holder assembly and the tray to access the center console storage space.

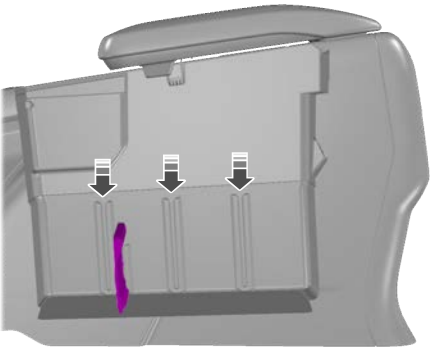


You can insert the tray in the place of the cup holder assembly.



You can stow the cup holder assembly in the front when not in use.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



You can divide the center console storage space by inserting the plastic ice scraper in one of the side retaining slots.

CENTER CONSOLE VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

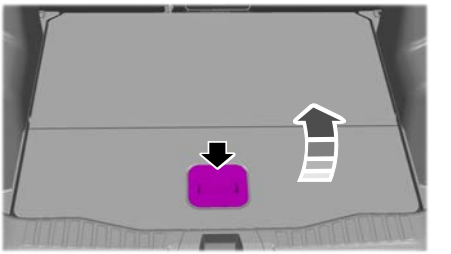
For more information scan here:

Explorer Adjusting the Center Console Video Link

UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

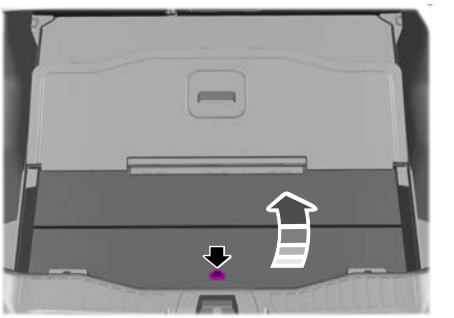
LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

Below the Upper Load Floor



Space is available below the upper load floor to stow items.

Below the Lower Load Floor



Additional space is available below the lower load floor to stow items.

STARTING AND POWERING OFF PRECAUTIONS

- The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, such as keys or a cell phone.
- A valid remote control must be inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.
- Remote controls left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display indicating that there is no key detected when you try to start your vehicle. Press the unlock button on the remote control to enable it, and then start your vehicle.
- Make sure all occupants fasten their seat belt.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).
- Make sure there is no charge cord coupler connected to the vehicle.

STARTING THE VEHICLE

The push button start is located on the right-hand side of the steering column.



1. Press the push button start once.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

2. Shift into the desired selector position with the brake pedal depressed.

Note: *Your vehicle is ready to drive.*

Alternatively, you can press and release the brake pedal to start the vehicle.

POWERING OFF

WARNING: Do not switch off your vehicle when it is moving. This results in a significant decrease in braking and steering assistance. If the vehicle is switched off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, could also turn off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *If you unintentionally switch your vehicle off, shift into neutral (N) and restart your vehicle.*

When your vehicle stationary and powered on or in accessory mode:

- Press and release the push button start without pressing the brake pedal. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories and applies the parking brake.
- Leave the vehicle when its stationary and the electric parking brake is applied. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories.

Emergency Power Off

Only in a case of emergency, when your vehicle is moving:

- Press the push button start and hold for at least one second.

The vehicle shifts into neutral (N) and brakes until it comes to a safe stop. After a complete stop, it shifts into park (P) automatically.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Automatic Power Off

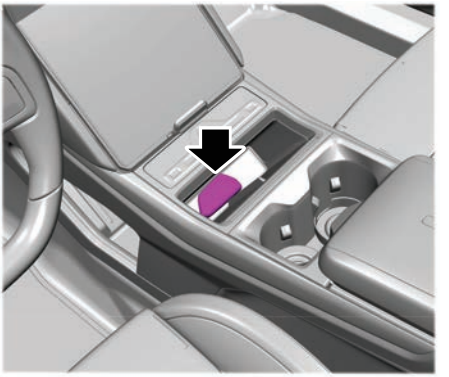
- If the vehicle is on and the driver moves away from the vehicle carrying the remote control, the vehicle switches off automatically after a short period of time.
- If the hood is opened when the vehicle power is on, the power will not be switched off automatically.

The vehicle automatically powers off if the electric parking brake is applied and two of the following occur:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is not fastened.
- The sensors do not detect the driver in the seat.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle with an authorized remote control or the remote control battery is depleted, follow the steps below.



1. Place the remote control in the floor console storage tray as shown with the buttons facing upward.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button start.

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the vehicle not start?

- The system does not function if the remote control frequencies are jammed, or if the remote control battery has no charge. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 139).

Why does the vehicle not start?

- The system does not function if the 12-volt battery has no charge. 12-volt battery depletion can occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electrified energy to power your vehicle.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not point the jet from a high-pressure sprayer straight at the orange high voltage cables or at components belonging to the high voltage battery system or the 12 volt battery system. The incorrect use of a high-pressure sprayer can cause damage and lead to personal injury.

WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

PRESERVING YOUR HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

When using the battery at a low state of charge, your vehicle could start disabling accessory features to protect battery life.

If your vehicle reaches a 0% state of charge, recharge your vehicle as soon as possible.

In everyday use it is acceptable to use the full state of charge window, however there are a few best practices we recommend in order to maintain the health and life of your battery.

Overnight Charging

You can increase the longevity and performance of your high voltage battery by using the charge scheduling and departure and comfort settings on your touchscreen or in the FordPass app.

With Charge Scheduling you can improve the high voltage battery's longevity by delaying the start of charging and setting a maximum charging limit. We recommend to set your preferred charging times to start at least 2-3 hours after your typical plug in time. This allows the battery to cool before charging begins. Additionally, setting the maximum charge level to be less than 100% for everyday usage reduces strain on the battery.

You can improve driving range and performance by scheduling departure times and cabin comfort level with the Departure and Comfort features. This warms or cools the cabin and also conditions the battery to ensure best driving range and performance by the set departure time.

DC Charging

Frequent use of DC charging could result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan. See **DC Charging** (page 158).

Storage Temperature

Storing your vehicle in temperatures between 1ºC (34ºF) and 45ºC (113ºF) is the most beneficial for the high voltage battery.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Plug in your vehicle when temperatures reach the freezing point to maintain battery performance and maximize driving range.

Storage State of Charge

You can increase the battery life by maintaining your state of charge below 100%. When you park your vehicle for an extended period of 30 days or more, we recommend your battery to be at approximately 50% state of charge. Storing your vehicle's high voltage battery at higher states of charge is less favorable than storing at lower states of charge.

Note: *To achieve this state of charge for storage, you can drive your vehicle down to 50% and set a charge limit for your location.*

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

ENERGY CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging)

The declared WLTP energy consumptions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

In accordance with the Worldwide Harmonized Light Vehicles Test Procedure (WLTP) the certified electric range can be achieved with a fully charged battery depending on the existing series and battery configuration. The actual electric range may vary due to various factors such as weather conditions, driving style, route profile, vehicle condition, age and condition of the lithium-ion battery.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ENERGY CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Electric Range City	Electric Range	Electric Energy Consumption	Weighted, Combined CO_2
km (mi)	km (mi)	kWh/100km (mi/kWh)	g/km
428 - 787 (265 - 489)	340 - 602 (211 - 374)	17.5 - 13.9 (3.5 - 4.4)	0

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Air conditioning for the vehicle interior switched off. Cooling battery...	Displays when the high voltage battery temperature is too high. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked.
HV battery: risk of fire! Pull over safely ASAP and leave the vehicle. Call emergency services!	Safely stop and exit your vehicle as soon as possible, then seek roadside assistance.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHARGING EQUIPMENT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Read all instructions and warnings in this publication before using the charging equipment.

WARNING: Do not use an electrical outlet that is immersed or submerged in water, snow, or in an electrical storm. When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The wall outlet and charging equipment must be in good condition and installed to comply with provisions of up-to-date local codes and regulations. Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. Have a qualified, licensed electrician install and check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded, the connection feels loose, or the outlet is damaged. The wall plug must fit firmly and fully into the outlet. Do not use extension cords, surge protectors, timers or other adapters. Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock, property damage, personal injury, or death.

WARNING: Do not drop the control box or coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.

WARNING: Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the charging equipment components as it will not operate. Charging equipment components contain critical safety devices in the wall outlet plug and connector that cannot be serviced. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F). Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F). Stow the control box indoors on the hanger or all the charging equipment in the bag after use to prevent damage to the charging equipment and personal injury.

WARNING: Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Do not put fingers or any object into the electric charge coupler. Supervise any children in the vicinity of the charging equipment when plugged into the wall outlet. Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the charging equipment, fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

WARNING: This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.

WARNING: High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution panel. Contact with high voltage can result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Please note that you can trigger the power liftgate while swiping the charging cable under the rear bumber.

CHARGING EQUIPMENT OVERVIEW

Public Charge Cord

Your vehicle comes with a public charge cord located in the rear luggage compartment under the load floor.



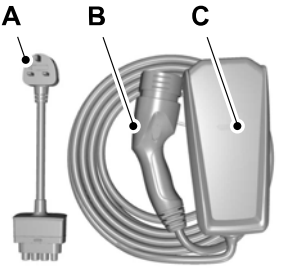
You can charge your high voltage battery with the public charge cord at a public AC charge station that has no cables attached. See **Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord** (page 156).

Universal Home Charge Cord (If Equipped)

The universal home charge cord allows you to charge your vehicle's high-voltage battery using a standard household outlet. See **Charging at Home** (page 152).

The universal home charge cord can be purchased separately as an accessory. It has a low power connector to use with a 230V outlet. A high power connector can also be purchased separately. Connector type varies by market. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.

We recommend that you use genuine Ford equipment specifically designed for your vehicle. In any other cases, read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.



A Connector.
B Coupler.
C Control Box.

You must plug the connector into the control box first. Then plug the connector into the household outlet, and then plug into the vehicle charge port.

The power indicator illuminates blue when the connector is properly inserted into the control box and dedicated wall outlet.

Note: *To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until an audible click is heard. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion causes a longer charge session or faults.*

Note: *Follow the installation instructions provided with the charger.*

Note: *We recommend using the supplied plugs and connectors.*

Note: *Use the correct connector for the appropriate market in which you are charging your vehicle.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If a dedicated circuit is not available, contact a licensed professional electrician regarding the installation of a dedicated outlet.*

Note: *The universal home charge cord will not charge and give a fault indication, if ground is not present.*

Note: *Plug the connector for the universal home charge cord directly into the wall plug receptacle. Do not plug the universal home charge cord into any form of extension cord.*

Note: *If the wall bracket is not used for mounting the charging equipment, plug the charging equipment into an outlet closer to ground.*

Note: *Handle the coupler with care. Do not drop the coupler. The coupler and the cable should be mounted to the wall when not in use.*

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	IEC
Voltage	230 VAC
Maximum Current	32 amps max continuous
Frequency	50Hz
Power draw when idle	< 2 Watts
Power draw when charging	< 4 Watts
Cable length	6.1 m (20 ft)
Weight	4.2 kg (9.3 lb)
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F)
Environmental	IP65
Ventilation	Not required
Maximum Altitude	4000m

Universal Home Charge Cord Auto-Restart

Auto-restart helps make sure that your vehicle is charged and ready for use when needed. A charge could be interrupted if errors are detected. Charging resumes once the error is no longer detected. The red indicator illuminates during an error condition.

The exception to the immediate auto-restart is when the interruption is due to a charger ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) event. The charger attempts to restart 15 minutes after a (GFCI) event. After the fourth attempt to restart, the charger shuts down and the red indicator stays on.

If the fault persists, do not continue to try to charge your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer.

MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Make sure you wrap the universal home charge cord after charging. Store the universal home charge cord in the storage bag supplied with the universal home charge cord when not in use.

When charging is complete, replace the universal home charge cord in the rear luggage compartment under the load floor.

Note: *Do not hold the universal home charge cord by the power cable. Hold the complete unit and carefully place back in the storage bag.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *To remove the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and pull away from the control box.*

CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Do not use cleaners or solvents as this could damage the universal home charge cord. Do not place stress on the charger cables. If the unit overheats, remove the universal home charge cord from direct sunlight.

SAFETY FEATURES

The charger includes the following safety features to protect against the risk of electric shock:

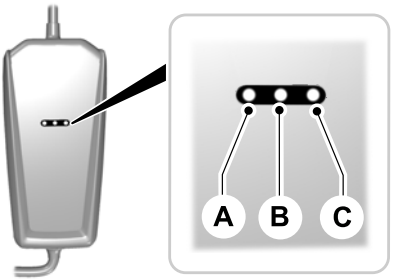
- Service ground check: The charger constantly checks for the presence of a service ground connection. If the service ground ever fails, the charger's red indicator illuminates and shuts down power to the vehicle.
- Thermal event sensor: Charger module senses out-of-ordinary thermal events and decreases charging current or shut the unit down if required.
- GFCI protection: The charger has a ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) reaction system to protect against electric shock. If the charger module detects an output ground fault, it shuts down power to the output cable and the red indicator illuminates.
- Insulation: The charger module, connector, cable assembly, and charge coupler are completely insulated, no exposed live parts, to protect against electric shock.
- Unintentional disconnection: The charge coupler is designed to minimize unintentional disconnection. A pilot signal wire in the cable and charge coupler eliminates the possibility of electric shock when not connected to a vehicle or if an unintended disconnect occurs during a charge. Disconnection during charging is safe.

CHARGING EQUIPMENT INDICATORS (IF EQUIPPED)

The universal home charge cord has three LED indicators on the control box.

The universal home charge cord is an optional equipment. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.

We recommend that you use genuine Ford equipment specifically designed for your vehicle. In any other cases, read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.



A Amber fault indicator.
B Blue status indicator.
C Red trouble indicator.

Note: *When first plugged into a wall outlet the amber, blue and red indicators blink once. Then the blue indicator turns on, followed by a blink of the red indicator. After, the blue indicator turns off then back on. This cycle happens twice if a different connector is used from a previous charge.*

Unpowered

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	OFF	The universal home charge cord is not powered.

Make sure the outlet is operational, and the circuit breaker is in the ON position or try using another outlet. Ensure the connector is fully inserted into the universal home charge cord. Ensure the plug is not severely degraded. If the error persists, contact us.

Charging

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	PULSING	OFF	The universal home charge cord is charging.

No action required.

Standby

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	ON	OFF	The universal home charge cord is powered and ready to charge. At the current time the universal home charge cord is not charging the vehicle.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

If you expect the universal home charge cord to be charging the vehicle, make sure the vehicle coupler is properly inserted into the vehicle. Check and adjust your charging time preferences in the on screen display. If your vehicle is still not charging, contact us.

Startup and Rebooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	ON	ON	The universal home charge cord is recovering after encountering an error.

The universal home charge cord is powering up or recovering after an error. If the universal home charge cord cycles for more than 2-3 minutes, unplug the vehicle coupler. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the issue persists, contact us.

Charging Reduced, Internal Issue

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	PULSING	OFF	The universal home charge cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating.

Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact us.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Charging Reduced, AC Plug Or Wall Outlet

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
BLINK	PULSING	OFF	The universal home charge cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating of the connector or the wall outlet.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. Ensure the connector is fully seated. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. Have a licensed electrician check for missing ground, utility under or overvoltage. If the error persists, contact us.

User Troubleshooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	OFF	OFF	The universal home charge cord has encountered a fault that requires troubleshooting.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact us.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	ON	There is an internal fault in the universal home charge cord that cannot be recovered.

Try a different connector if you have one available. If error persists, contact us.

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	BLINK	There is an internal fault in the connector that cannot be recovered.

Try using another connector if you have one available. If not, contact us about obtaining a replacement. If your warranty has expired, you can order a replacement from your dealer.

Ground Leakage Fault

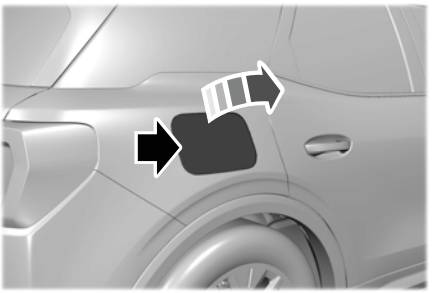
AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	PULSING	Electrical current is leaking through a potentially unsafe path.

Note: *When plugging into an unfamiliar wall outlet, let the vehicle charge for several minutes before leaving it unattended. The red indicator illuminates if it is not charging. The unit turns off if the breaker or infrastructure ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) is tripped. You can view your vehicle charging status remotely via the Ford Pass app.*

LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is above the rear wheel well on the right side of your vehicle. To open, press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



Note: *Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.*

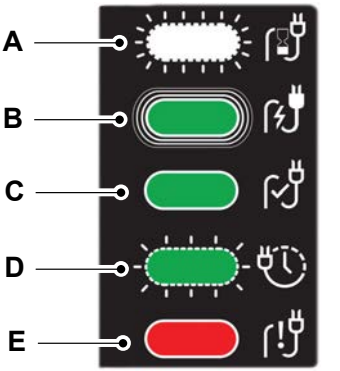
CHARGE PORT INDICATORS



The charge status indicator is next to the charging port behind the charge port door. It indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

A label on the inside of the charge port door lists the indicator statuses.

Indicator Statuses



A **Lit up white:** no charging function is active. **Blinking white:** charging connector detected. **Flashing white:** the vehicle is establishing the connection with the charging infrastructure. Charging process is being prepared.

B **Pulsating green:** the high-voltage battery is being charged.

C **Lit up green:** charging completed successfully.

D **Blinking green:** a timer-controlled charging operation is active but not yet started.

E **Lit up red:** charging system is faulty. **Red and green light up alternately:** reduced charging speed to protect the vehicle due to a present fault. For example, charging connector is not fully inserted.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *Charging faults are identified by the color red on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the universal home charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.*

AC CHARGING

CHARGING AT HOME

The universal home charge cord is an optional equipment. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.

We recommend that you use genuine Ford equipment specifically designed for your vehicle. In any other cases, read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

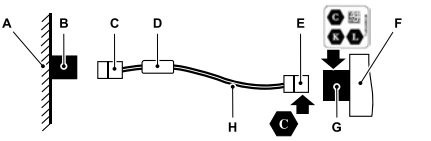
AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE - The plug must be properly grounded. Use a dedicated circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

You must unwrap the universal home charge cord completely before charging.

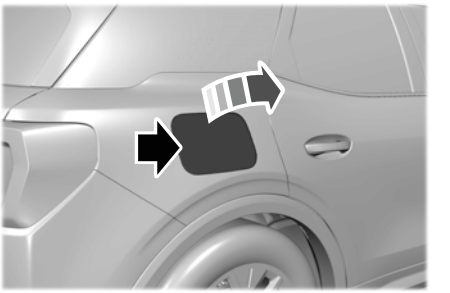
When using the universal home charge cord, plug the charge coupler into the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



A Mains.
B Socket Outlet (Household).
C Plug.
D Control box.
E Charge coupler.
F Vehicle.
G Charge port receptacle.
H Universal home charge cord.

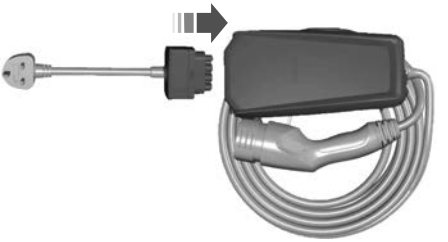
1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: *Your vehicle must be in park (P).*



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate connector for the wall outlet you will use.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

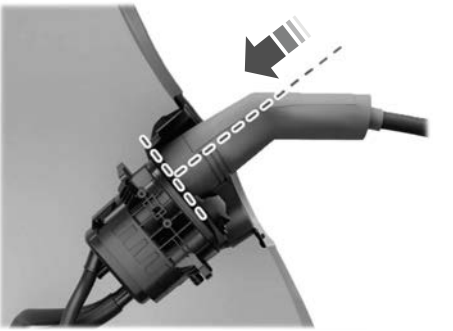


4. Plug the connector into the universal home charge cord control box.

Note: *To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until it clicks. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion will cause a longer charge session or faults.*

5. Plug the connector into the wall outlet before connecting the charge coupler to your vehicle's charge port.
6. Confirm that the universal home charge cord's LEDs illuminate to the control box.
7. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.







Note: *Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.*

Note: *When the handle is properly engaged the charge port indicator flashes in white. It pulses green when the high-voltage battery is charging.*

Note: *When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging was previously set up for this location.*

Note: *Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *If charging for your vehicle fails, please contact the Customer Relationship Center. To ensure superior service, please take note of the serial number when contacting customer support.*

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging

1. Unlock your vehicle. See **Using Keyless Entry** (page 54). See **Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 50).

Note: *The charge port indicator illuminates white when the coupler is ready to disconnect.*

2. Remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

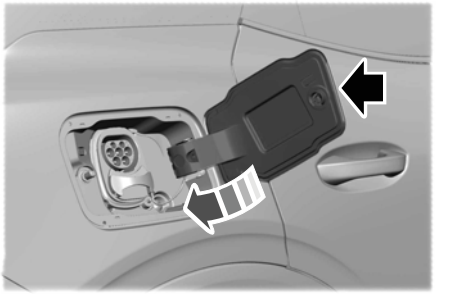
Note: *If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in 30 seconds and charging resumes.*

Note: *Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.*

Note: *You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.*

Note: *If the cord does not unlock, press the unlock button on the remote control three times or try the manual release method. See* ***Charge Coupler Manual Release*** *(page 161).*

Note: *You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.*



3. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

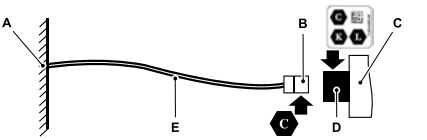
CHARGING IN PUBLIC

Charging at an AC charge station with cables attached.

AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

When using an AC charge station with cables attached, choose charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



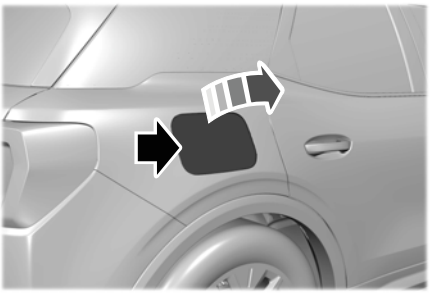
A AC charge station.
B Charge coupler.
C Vehicle.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

D Charge port receptacle.
E Cable.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

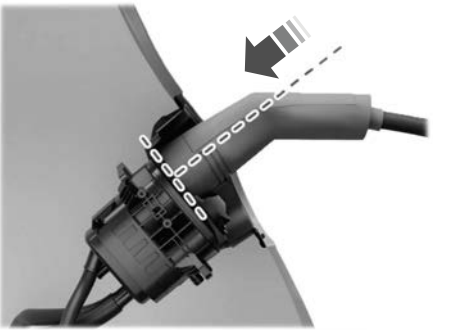
Note: *Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.*



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.



3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.





Note: *Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.*

Note: *When the handle is properly engaged the charge port indicator flashes in white. It pulses green when the high-voltage battery is charging.*

Note: *When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging was previously set up for this location.*

Note: *Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.*

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available on the touchscreen or the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle app or the BlueOval RFID charge card to activate and pay for charging. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging

1. Unlock your vehicle. See **Using Keyless Entry** (page 54). See **Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 50).

Note: *The charge port indicator illuminates white when the coupler is ready to disconnect.*

2. Remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

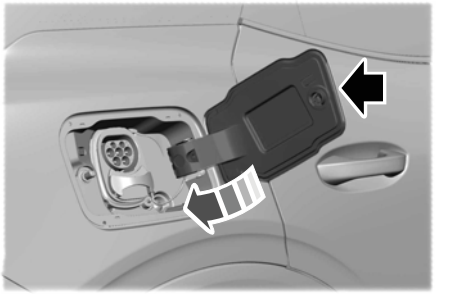
Note: *If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in 30 seconds and charging resumes.*

Note: *Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.*

Note: *You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.*

Note: *If the cord does not unlock, press the unlock button on the remote control three times.*

Note: *You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.*



3. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING USING YOUR PUBLIC CHARGE CORD

Charging at an AC charge station without cables attached or at a wall box.

Charge wall boxes are optional equipment. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.

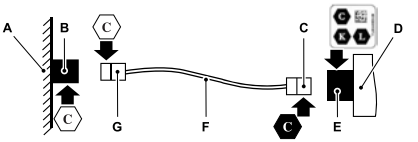
AC charging is the preferred method of charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

When using an AC charge station without cables attached, plug your public charge cord into the charge station and the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

You must unwrap the public charge cord completely before charging.

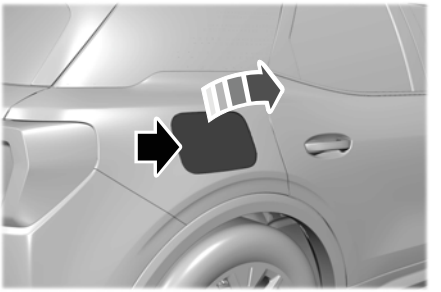
Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



A AC charge station.
B Charge station port.
C Vehicle charge coupler.
D Vehicle.
E Charge port receptacle.
F Public charge cable.
G Charge station charge coupler.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: *Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.*



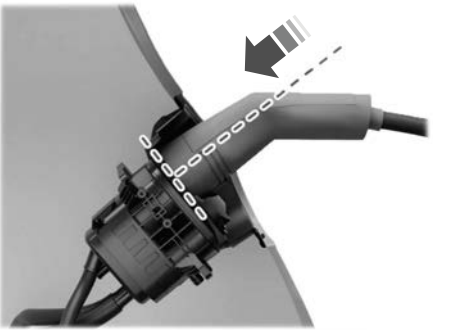
2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate charge station port.



4. Plug your public charge cord into the charge station port.

Note: *To insert the coupler, firmly grasp the handle and push into the charge station port.*

5. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.





Note: *Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.*

Note: *When the handle is properly engaged the charge port indicator flashes in white. It pulses green when the high-voltage battery is charging.*

Note: *When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging was previously set up for this location.*

Note: *Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.*

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available on the touchscreen or the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle app or the BlueOval RFID charge card to activate and pay for charging. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging

1. Unlock your vehicle. See **Using Keyless Entry** (page 54). See **Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 50).

Note: *The charge port indicator illuminates white when the coupler is ready to disconnect.*

2. Remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

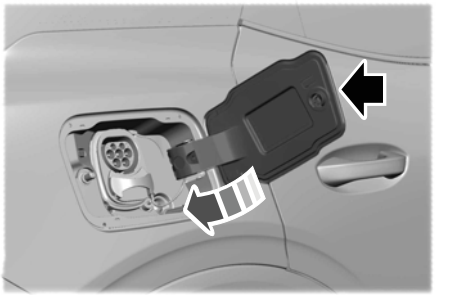
Note: *If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in 30 seconds and charging resumes.*

Note: *Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.*

Note: *You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.*

Note: *If the cord does not unlock, press the unlock button on the remote control three times.*

Note: *You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.*



3. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

DC CHARGING

DC charging allows you to charge the vehicle's high voltage battery in significantly less time than the standard charge method. You can charge on the go before the battery has exhausted all of its power, or when traveling using the trip planner as part of your vehicle App.

We recommend ending DC charges at 80% state of charge.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

In cold temperatures, you may notice that DC charging takes longer when the ambient temperature drops below 10°C (50°F).

The rapid charging function heats up the battery to achieve the maximum rapid-charging capability. See **Charging Settings** (page 162). You can turn it on before you arrive at the rapid charger. If route guidance to a rapid charge is active, your vehicle will automatically optimize the high-voltage battery's charging capability until you arrive.

For the convenience of DC charging and time, there is a different fee structure depending on the charging station and network you choose.

Note: *The system could reduce DC fast charging rate to preserve the battery. This is based on battery temperature, battery state of charge and battery health.*

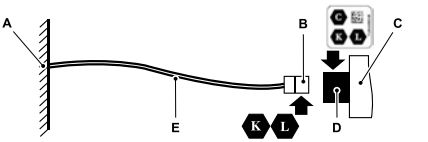
Note: *When the temperature is below freezing, fully turning off cabin heat for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging could significantly improve the charging rate.*

Note: *Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.*

Note: *The system could reduce the DC charging rate to maximize the life of the battery.*

To charge the high-voltage battery at a DC charge station:

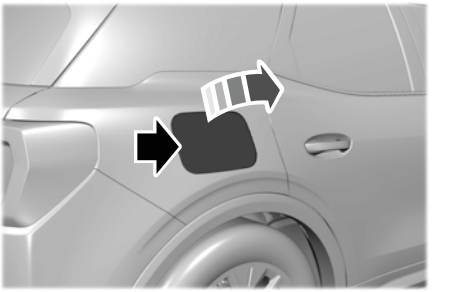
When using charge station with cables attached, choose the charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



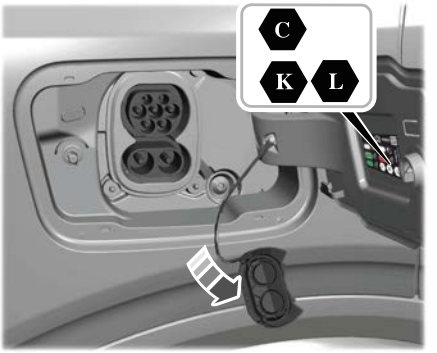
A DC charging station.
B Charge coupler.
C Vehicle.
D Charge port receptacle.
E Cable.

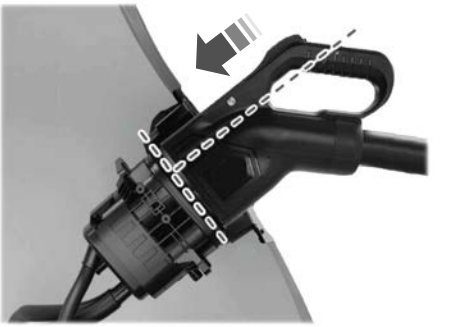
1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: *Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.*



2. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.





3. Open the dust cap cover on the charge port to expose lower connectors.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.





Note: *Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.*

Note: *When the handle is properly engaged the charge port indicator flashes in white. It pulses green when the high-voltage battery is charging.*

Note: *When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless you change the charge limit in the vehicle charging screen. See* ***Charging Settings*** *(page 162).*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available on the touchscreen or the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Stopping Charging

1. Stop the charging on the DC charge station's interface.

Note: *Alternatively, enter your vehicle and stop charging on the vehicle touchscreen. See* ***Using Keyless Entry*** *(page 54). See* ***Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle*** *(page 50).*

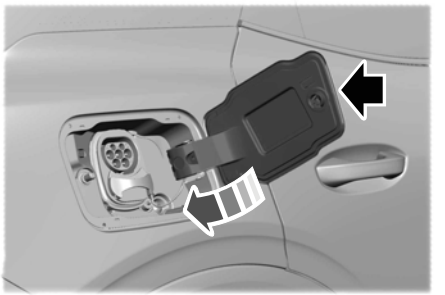
Note: *The charge port indicator illuminates white when the coupler is ready to disconnect.*

2. Remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Note: *Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.*

Note: *After a finished DC charge event the charge cord is released automatically.*

Note: *You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.*

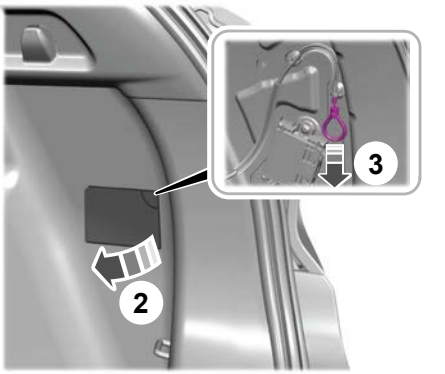


3. Press the center left-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE

If your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler, you can manually release it.

1. Open the luggage compartment.



2. Open the flap on the bottom right side of the luggage compartment trim.
3. Pull the ring down to manually release the charge coupler.
4. Close the flap.
5. Remove the charge coupler from the charge port.

Note: *The next time you plug in to charge your vehicle, the locking mechanism re-engages and the pull ring resets.*

Note: *If the problem persist, have your vehicle checked.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHARGING SETTINGS

You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set a maximum charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Scheduled charging can be set up on the touchscreen.

To view your charge settings:

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.

Charge Settings Overview



A	Currently set maximum charge limit.
B	Estimated driving range.
C	Maximum charge limit slider.
D	Charge settings.
E	Charge locations.
F	Rapid-charging optimization.
G	Charge settings overview.
H	Charge times options.
I	High voltage battery state of charge bar.
J	High voltage battery state of charge.

Maximum Charge Limit

Select to set a maximum charge limit.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

To temporarily adjust the charge level at which charging stops, you can set a maximum charge limit. If the vehicle is already plugged in, the maximum charge limit applies to the current charging session.

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge. The estimated available driving range is also displayed.

Estimated Driving Range

Displays the estimated available driving range with current state of charge.

Charging Time Information

When charging, the estimated end time displays.

Note: *Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times.*

Charge Settings

You can select and adjust multiple charge settings in this menu:

- Battery care mode.
- Add charging stopovers automatically.
- Automatic rapid-charge optimization.
- Reduce AC charging current.
- Release AC charging connector automatically.

Note: *Press the arrow icons next to the feature names for additional details.*

Rapid-Charging Optimization

You can select this feature to precondition the high voltage battery for the next DC charging when possible. This reduces charge times.

Charging Locations

Using your current location, you can add up to five charging locations. Within the touchscreen, each location can have various charging time options. The vehicle automatically recognizes a stored charging location and adopts the settings when charging.

Note: *Charging locations do not apply to DC fast chargers.*

Advanced Charge Time Options

Charging for Departure Time

By setting departure times you control charging schedules and the option to warm or cool your cabin when your vehicle is plugged in.

You can program up to three departure times for each saved charging location, then apply them individually to the desired days of the week. The next activated departure time will be used.

By setting a departure time and customized times, and then selecting to charge for departure time, your vehicle can use your charging time preferences to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure.

Note: *By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, less energy is needed for heating or cooling the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range. Cabin conditioning comfort level may vary depending on whether you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power in addition to the charging power could be used to heat the cabin.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Charging at Customized Times

You can set up to four preferred time windows. When activated they apply to all days.

This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Note: *When selecting this option, your vehicle only charges during your preferred time windows.*

Charging Location Setup

1.  Press this icon on the charge settings screen.
2. Add the current vehicle position as a charging location.

Note: *You can add only your current position as a charging location. When saved, you can edit the settings for all existing charging locations.*

3. Enter a name for the current position and press save.
4. Select to reduce AC charging current if the charging location requires it.

Note: *Depending on the country, the vehicle is charged at a reduced charging current of 6A or 8A. The setting is recommended if several large electrical consumers are operated simultaneously via the same circuit.*

5. Select to automatically release the AC charging coupler at the current charging location when charging is stopped or completed.
6. Select one of the three departure time settings shown for each saved location.
7. On the departure times settings screen, set your desired departure time. Select either the individual day of your departure or the applicable days of the week for recurring days.
8. When returning to the charging settings screen for your charging location, your settings are now shown on the departure times schedule screen.
9. Activate and deactivate the departure times as needed.

Note: *At least one departure time must be activated to enable departure time-based options.*

10. Select your lower battery charge limit.

Note: *A minimum charge level of up to 50% can be set. The vehicle starts charging immediately after power is connected and charges to this minimum setting. No other charge settings apply until the minimum charge level is reached.*

11. Select your upper battery charge limit.

Note: *The upper battery charge limit limits the maximum charge level of the high voltage battery to a value between 50% and 100%. Full charging of the high voltage battery is not normally necessary in daily vehicle use. Charging stops when your vehicle reaches the maximum charge limit setting.*

12. Set preferred charging times by editing the start and end times. You can set up four blocks of time charge windows.

Note: *At least one preferred time must be activated to enable the preferred times option or to take advantage of low electricity tariffs when charging for a departure time.*

13. The charging settings screen now displays your settings for this location.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location, the charge settings overview screen will display the location name, reflect your settings and enable the advanced charge time options drop down menu.

Note: *The charge time option can also be selected in the exit menu when powering off the vehicle.*

USING YOUR VEHICLE APP AND CHARGING

The vehicle app allows you to do the following:

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including settings and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the Charging Network.
- Check charging station plug availability.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

CHARGING EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION SYMBOLS



Identifier symbol visible on vehicle cord couplers, charge station cord couplers and vehicle charge ports.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Vehicle coupler, charge station coupler and vehicle charge port.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Identifier symbol visible on charge station ports and your public charge cord coupler.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Charge station port, public charge cord coupler.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	50 volt to 500 volt



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	200 volt to 920 volt

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Charging cable is too hot and cannot be unlocked yet. Please let it cool down first.	Please wait until the charging cable is ready to be disconnected.
Please follow instructions on the charging station or use different station.	A problem occurred during connecting to the charge station. Follow the instructions of the charge station or try a different station.
Driving range low. Please charge your vehicle.	Displays when the high voltage battery state of charge is low. Charge your vehicle as soon as possible.
No range remaining. Charge vehicle now.	
Charge vehicle now! Otherwise the battery may be damaged.	
Only manoeuvring possible! Please charge. Refer to Owner's Manual.	
Emergency charging active. Reconnect charging cable. Owner's Manual!	
Outside temperature is too low. Please charge and heat vehicle before you next set off.	Displays when your heating is temporarily unavailable due to low outside temperature.
Please use manual release for charging cable. Refer to Owner's Manual.	A problem occurred with the charge port unlock mechanism. Use the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 161). If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.
Unable to fully charge vehicle. Refer to Owner's Manual.	If there are no maximum charge settings applied and the problem persists, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer. See **Charging Settings** (page 162).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

My vehicle does not charge, what can I do?

Ensure you properly connect the charging equipment. Unplug the charging equipment from both the vehicle charge port and the charge station, wall box or outlet. If you use the universal home charge cord, check the connector to be sure that it is properly connected into the universal home charger control box. If the charging equipment is warm, or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet or a different connector if you have one available. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Explorer Charging Your Vehicle Video Link

For more information scan here:

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ELECTRIC MOTOR PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, switch the vehicle off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

SELECTOR POSITIONS

PARK (P)

Park By Brake

This feature replaces the transmission park (P) position on the selector with the electric parking brake button.



Pressing the electric parking brake button on the selector applies the electric parking brake and also prevents power from being transmitted to the driven wheels. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 179).

Note: *A tone could sound if you attempt to exit your vehicle without applying the parking brake.*

Note: *Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.*

Note: *Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake if a fuse is blown. See **Fuses** (page 278).*

Note: *Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.*

Note: *Your vehicle automatically applies the electric parking brake if you attempt to exit your vehicle without pressing the electric parking brake button. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 171).*

Note: *A tone could sound when you press the electric parking brake button.*

REVERSE (R)

WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)

WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Your vehicle is free to roll as long as you remain in the driver seat.

Roll-away protection is active in neutral (N) and automatically applies the electric parking brake if the driver leaves the vehicle.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

If you want to keep your vehicle in a free rolling state, roll-away protection needs to be deactivated. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 171).

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: *Various levels of brake energy recuperation are available when in drive (D). See **Efficient Drive Mode** (page 221).*

BRAKE (B)

In brake (B) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

In brake (B) your vehicle is in the highest brake energy recuperation mode.

Note: *In brake (B) your vehicle decelerates more noticeably than in drive (D) when the accelerator pedal is released.*

Note: *We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 261).*

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR



The position selector is on the right-hand side of the steering column.

1. Power your vehicle on. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 138).
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. To select drive (D), rotate the selector forward.
4. To select neutral (N), rotate the selector one position backward.

Note: *When you select neutral (N), an instructional message appears, asking if you want to turn roll-away protection off or not. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 171).*

5. To select reverse (R), rotate the selector two positions backward.
6. To select brake (B), rotate the selector forward once more when in drive (D).

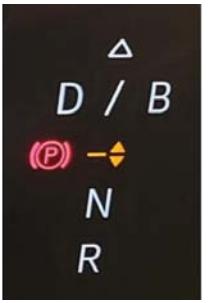
Note: *The selector always returns to its initial position. Rotate it forward once more to switch between brake (B) and drive (D).*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

7. To apply the electric parking brake, press the electric parking brake button on the selector when the vehicle is stationary. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 179).

SELECTOR POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



ELECTRIC MOTOR AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning

- Sounds when you press the electric parking brake button on the selector.
- Sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without applying the electric parking brake.

ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION

HOW DOES ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION WORK

Roll-away protection is always active by default. It secures the vehicle by automatically applying the electric parking brake if the driver leaves the vehicle without pressing the electric parking brake button.

Roll-away protection can be temporarily deactivated. In this case the vehicle is free to roll even if the driver leaves the vehicle, for example in an automatic car wash or when towing your vehicle. See **Emergency Towing** (page 275).

ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION LIMITATIONS

When roll-away protection is deactivated, the vehicle is free to roll. Make sure to avoid unwanted vehicle movement. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Your vehicle reactivates roll-away protection if any of the following occur:

- You power off your vehicle.
- You select a position other than neutral (N).

Roll-away protection may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver seat sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- A message appears advising to apply the parking brake after selecting drive (D), neutral (N) or reverse (R).

SWITCHING THE ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION ON AND OFF

Switching the Roll-Away Protection Off

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: *An instructional message appears.*

3. Confirm the message to turn roll-away protection off.

Note: *A permanent confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

Note: *A tone could sound when you deactivate roll-away protection.*

4. Release the brake pedal.

Note: *Your vehicle is free to roll.*

Switching the Roll-Away Protection On

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into a position other than neutral (N) or press the electric parking brake button to turn roll-away protection on.

Note: *If drive (D), brake (B) or reverse (R) is selected, the vehicle is ready to drive.*

Note: *Alternatively, you can also manage the feature settings on the touchscreen.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ELECTRIC MOTOR – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC MOTOR – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Your vehicle may roll away.	A reminder during driving that neutral (N) position is selected or when deactivating roll-away protection.
Heating temporarily activated to increase recuperation capacity.	The system releases battery energy through heating to provide battery capacity for brake energy recuperation when the high voltage battery state of charge is too high.
Error: selector lever. You can drive on.	The system has detected a fault. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.
Error: selector lever. You can drive on in the current gear until you switch the drive off.	
Electric drive too hot. Stop vehicle safely! Owner's Manual!	
Electric drive too hot. Performance is restricted.	
Electric drive too hot. Please slow down.	
Electric drive not working properly. Stop vehicle safely!	
Electric drive not working properly. Please visit workshop.	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Error: selector lever. Driving not possible. Contact workshop!	

HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

The all-wheel drive system is designed to continuously monitor and adjust power delivery to the front and rear wheels to optimize both traction and handling.

There is further information on driving in unique driving conditions. See **Driving Hints** (page 265).

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds that can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- When driving your vehicle on surfaces made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice, proceed with care.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

The all-wheel drive system is not intended for use with mismatched tires.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer regarding the allowed tire sizes.

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
All-wheel drive is restricted. Please adapt your driving behaviour.	The system stopped. It has reduced power. Please drive carefully.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of a crash when:

- You drive too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

If your accelerator pedal becomes stuck or trapped:

- Apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce power.
- Bring your vehicle to a complete stop and place it in park (P).
- Switch the power off.
- Apply the parking brake.

Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. If your vehicle has to be towed, we recommend that you contact a professional towing service.

LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 288).

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID

WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the ***MIN*** mark or above the ***MAX*** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: *To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.*

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 329).

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS

WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch your vehicle on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch your vehicle on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE

The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch your vehicle on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

BRAKES – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Brake servo is restricted.	The brake system requires service. You can drive on carefully but have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Brake servo failure.	The brake system requires service. You can drive on very slowly and carefully but have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Brake too hot. Stop vehicle safely!	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allow the brakes to cool down.
Brake has overheated. Please visit workshop.	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allow the brakes to cool down. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check brake fluid level! Refer to Owner's Manual.	Driving with low brake fluid level may cause a significant decrease in braking performance. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Please check brake pad.	You can drive on carefully. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings could be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear, and does not contribute to brake noise. See* ***Cleaning Wheels*** *(page 297).*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps could flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights could also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, switch the vehicle off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.



The electric parking brake button is on the position selector on the right-hand side of the steering column.

Press the button or power off when your vehicle is stationary.

Note: *Pressing the electric parking brake button on the selector also prevents power from being transmitted to the driven wheels. See* ***Park (P)*** *(page 169).*

Note: *The electric parking brake automatically applies if you attempt to leave your vehicle without pressing the button. See* ***Roll-Away Protection*** *(page 171).*

Automatic activation of the electric parking brake

The vehicle automatically activates the electric parking brake when the vehicle is stationary or rolling under 5 km/h (3 mph), and two of the following occur:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is not fastened.
- The sensors do not detect the driver in the seat.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Push the button and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the button.

Note: *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Shift into gear or neutral.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 270).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake is not applied, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Caution: electronic parking brake is not activated.	Apply the parking brake.
Electronic parking brake: gradient is too steep. Refer to Owner's Manual.	Park your vehicle on a less steep slope.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R).

HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–10 km/h (1–6 mph).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Note: *The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.*

Note: *The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.*

Note: *You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.*

SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4.  Press this icon to switch the feature on or off.

Note: *The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.*

Note: *If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert the reverse braking assist relies on input from the rear parking aid.*

Note: *The default setting is on in some regions.*

OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.

 A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Manoeuvre braking is active.	Displays when the system applies the brakes.
Manoeuvre braking is currently unavailable.	Make sure that all doors, liftgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. Make sure the parking aids and manoeuvre braking systems are on. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure the reverse brake assist is on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 182).
- Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- If your vehicle has the cross traffic alert system, make sure it is on. See **Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off** (page 238).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **Parking Aids** (page 191).
- Make sure the traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 186).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- An anti-lock brake, traction control or stability control event may have occurred. Reverse brake assist resumes operation when the event is complete.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert, rear parking aid and side parking aid sensors are not blocked or faulty. See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 238). See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 192). See **Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors** (page 194).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- Reverse brake assist does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: *If the answers to why the system is unavailable do not assist in returning reverse brake assist to available, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Exterior***.
5. Swipe to rotate the image of the vehicle until the preferred settings appear.
6. Press ***Brakes*** .
7. Make the required Auto Hold adjustments.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: *The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.*

Note: *Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you shift into gear or neutral. See* ***Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake*** *(page 180).*

Note: *The system turns off if you shift into neutral (N) and press the brake pedal.*

Auto hold system does not function if any of the following occur:

- You use active park assist.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into neutral (N) before the system is active.
- Your vehicle is in temporary neutral mode.

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS

 Illuminates gray when the system is on.

Illuminates green when the system is active and holds your vehicle at a standstill.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF

WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch your vehicle on. If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1.  Press this icon on the status bar of the touchscreen.
2. 

Press this icon and switch the feature off.

Note: *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR

 Flashes yellow during operation.

Shortly illuminates when you switch your vehicle on. If it does not illuminate when you switch your vehicle on, or continuously illuminates, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

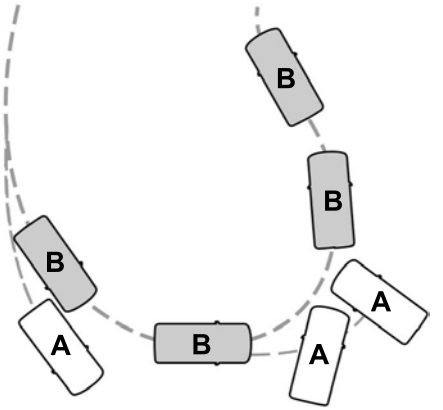
TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



A Without stability control.
B With stability control.

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing electric motor output.

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - AWD

WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after repairing a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

The system turns on when you switch your vehicle on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

ESC Sport

1.  Press this icon on the status bar of the touchscreen.
2. 

Press this icon and switch the feature on.



Illuminates yellow in the instrument cluster when you switch ESC Sport on.

Note: *Stability control only reduces and is not fully switched off.*

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF - RWD

The system turns on when you switch your vehicle on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR

 Flashes yellow during operation. Shortly illuminates when you switch your vehicle on. If it does not illuminate when you switch your vehicle on, or continuously illuminates, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

STABILITY CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

STABILITY CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
ESC Sport: directional stability is restricted.	Displays the status of the stability control system when you switch ESC Sport on. The system turns into a reduced mode.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

The electric power steering system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.

If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving, the system switches to reduced steering assist or manual steering. Additionally, whenever disconnecting the battery or installing a new one, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

Note: *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

When your vehicle is still moving, a significant decrease in steering assistance or a loss of steering assistance could occur if:

- You switch your vehicle off.
- Your vehicle loses electrical power.
- Your vehicle detects a concern.

When your vehicle is off and your vehicle begins moving, there is no steering assistance.

STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

STEERING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates yellow, a fault is present within the vehicle's steering system. If it flashes, restart your vehicle. If it continues to flash, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



If it illuminates or flashes red, a fault is present within the vehicle's steering system. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Power steering not working properly. You can drive on.	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Power steering not working. Visit workshop!	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering lock: unable to restart.	You cannot restart your vehicle, it requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *If your vehicle is damaged and the sensors are misaligned, it can cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: *In some cases when a trailer is connected to the vehicle the parking aid automatically turns off.*

Note: *Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the accuracy of the system can be affected.*

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF

The parking aid system remains on at all times. You can only switch the audible tone on and off.

The system can be muted using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

The parking aids also can be muted in the parking menu.

1.  Press to open the settings.
2.  Press to open the parking menu.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

3.  Press to open the parking aid.
4.  Press to mute or unmute the parking aid.

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h (9 mph).

The rear parking aid detects large objects when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and moving backward at a low speed.

When parking aids are muted by the driver, the automatic audible warning does not sound when approaching an obstacle.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the volume of the audible warning decreases. If your vehicle moves backward, the tone increases again.

Note: *When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.*

Note: *An automatic braking intervention can take place if the driver does not react when an obstacle is approaching.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h (9 mph).

The front parking aid detects objects when your vehicle is moving at a low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle and provides an audible warning, for example another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning mutes.

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 15 km/h (9 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off and audible warning mutes.

The front and rear sensors provide visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 15 km/h (9 mph) and obstacles are detected inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the volume of the audible warning decreases. If your vehicle moves backward, the tone increases again.

Note: *When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.*

Note: *An automatic braking intervention can take place if the driver does not react when an obstacle is approaching.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

SIDE PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 90 cm (35 in) from the sides of your vehicle.

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over three minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. You must drive at least 150 m (492 ft) above 30 km/h (19 mph) to reset the steering wheel angle information.

Note: *If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.*

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

If the parking aid is on, the side sensing system provides visual indication and audible warning if an obstacle is within 90 cm (35 in) of the side and inside the driving path of your vehicle.

LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS



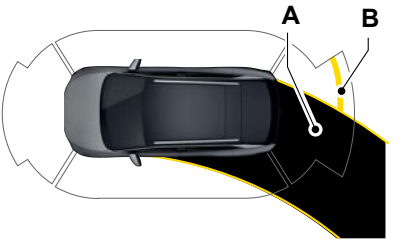
The side parking sensors are in the front and rear bumpers.

SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

PARKING AID INDICATORS



A Steering wheel angle.
B Object detection.

The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle image.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

Visual indication remains on when the position selector is in reverse (R). When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when your vehicle is in reverse (R). During operation, active guide lines appear on the Camera screen that represent the path of your vehicle.

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

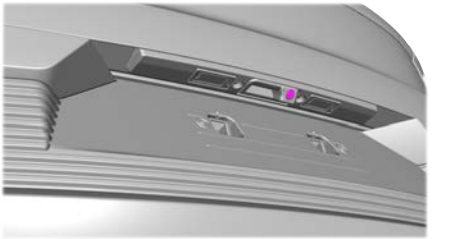
WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.*

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

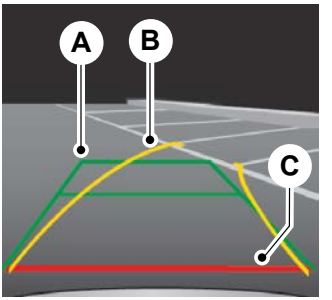


The rear view camera is next to the liftgate switch.

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



A Green: Boundaries of the vehicle.

B Yellow: Active guide lines.

C Red: Boundary or vehicle safety clearance.

Rear view touch buttons:

- Rear Cross Traffic View: Shows a wide-angle view to monitor the cross traffic behind the vehicle. See **Active Park Assist** (page 200).
- Rear Normal View: Shows the rear camera default view. See **Rear View Camera** (page 196).
- Trailer Hitch View: The centerline shows the drive path of the trailer hitch. See **360 Degree Camera** (page 198).

REAR VIEW CAMERA VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

For more information scan here:

Explorer Rear View Camera Video Link

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

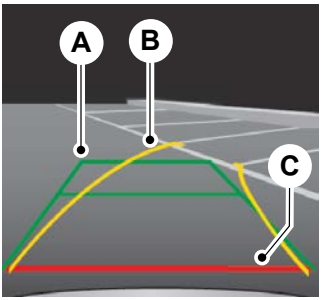
360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

Note: *Use caution if a door is ajar. The camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.*

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



A Green line: Shows the width and lenght of the vehicle.

B Yellow line: Shows the drive path of the vehicle.

C Red line: Show the vehicle safety clearance.

360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF

Switching the 360 Degree Camera On

To switch the 360 degree camera on, perform any of the following actions:

- Change the gear to reverse (R).
- Press the camera button in the center console.
- Press the parking button "P" on the display touchscreen.

Switching the 360 Degree Camera Off

To switch the 360 degree camera off, perform any of the following actions:

- Drive faster than 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Press the camera button in the center console.
- Press the parking button "P" on the display touchscreen.

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW

To change the camera view, press the touch buttons located below the camera image.

- Front normal view.
- Rear normal view.
- Rear cross traffic view.
- Trailer hitch view.

To change the view to the selected region, press one of the four regions around the top view vehicle icon.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and region not all options are available.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

HOW DOES ACTIVE PARK ASSIST WORK

Active park assist uses sensors to detect parking spaces. The system steers, accelerates, brakes and shifts gears as necessary to maneuver into or out of a parking space.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

Note: *Park Assist cannot be activated if a trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle. Park Assist must be deactivated manually if you tow a trailer with a towing bracket that was not fitted at the factory.*

SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Start your vehicle.
2.  Press to open the parking menu.
3.  Press to switch park assist on.

Note: *You can activate park assist retrospectively after driving past a suitable parking space.*

Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time press the active park assist button or turn the steering wheel.

SEARCHING FOR A PARKING SPACE

1.  Press to open the settings.
2.  Press to open the parking menu.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

3. Drive your vehicle parallel to the other parked vehicles.

Note: *Park assist automatically searches for possible parking spaces displaying them on the touchscreen, and highlights the preferred parking space.*

Note: *In case of multiple parking spaces select the desired parking space.*

4.  Press to select the parking mode.

Note: *The selected parking space is marked by the blue colored vehicle.*

Note: *A circular arrow sign appears if the parking mode can be changed.*

5. Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.

Note: *You can activate park assist after passing a suitable parking space.*

ENTERING A PARKING SPACE

1. Select a parking space on the touchscreen.
2. Hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.
3. Press Start on the touchscreen.
4. Release the steering wheel.
5. Release the brake.

Note: *The parking procedure starts.*

6. Park assist independently changes the vehicle's direction of travel.
7. Wait until park assist finishes turning the steering wheel at the end of the parking.

Note: *When the parking procedure is complete, a text is displays on the touchscreen and an acoustic signal sounds.*

8. The electric parking brake automatically switches on.

Note: *You can slow down your vehicle at any time during the parking maneuver by pressing the brake pedal.*

In a situation when the front or rear of the vehicle is driven into a parking space, but the parking is not be complete, park assist can take control of the parking procedure and guide the vehicle into the parking space.

Reverse parking

1. Hold your vehicle with the brake pedal.
2.  Press to open the settings.
3.  Press to open the parking menu.
4.  Press to switch park assist on.

Note: *The selected parking space shows on the touchscreen.*

5. Press start to begin the parking procedure.
6. Release the steering wheel.
7. Release the brake.

Note: *The parking procedure starts.*

8. Park assist independently changes the vehicle's direction of travel.
9. Wait until park assist finishes turning the steering wheel at the end of the parking.

Note: *When the parking procedure is complete a message displays on the touchscreen and an acoustic signal sounds.*

10. The electric parking brake automatically switches on.

Forward parking

1. Hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

2.  Press to open the settings.
3.  Press to open the parking menu.
4.  Press to switch park assist on.

Note: *The selected parking space shows on the touchscreen.*

5. Press start to begin the parking procedure.
6. Release the steering wheel.
7. Release the brake.

Note: *The parking procedure starts.*

8. Park assist independently changes the vehicle's direction of travel.
9. Wait until park assist finishes turning the steering wheel at the end of the parking.

Note: *When the parking procedure is complete, a message displays on the touchscreen and an acoustic signal sounds.*

10. The electric parking brake automatically switches on.

EXITING A PARKING SPACE

1. Start your vehicle.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Activate park assist.
4. Use the turn signal lever to select the direction in which you want to drive out of the parking space.
5. Press start on the touchscreen.
6. Release the steering wheel.
7. Release the brake.
8. Park assist guides the vehicle completely out of the parking space.

Note: *A message on the screen and an acoustic signal indicates that the maneuver has been completed. You can take control of your vehicle.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

When Following a Vehicle

WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

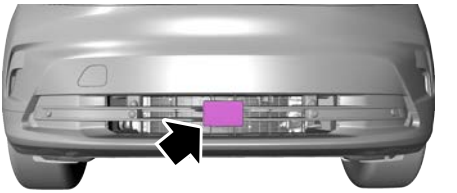
WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

Note: *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function.

The radar sensor has a limited field of view.

It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations.

The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Detection Issues Can Occur:

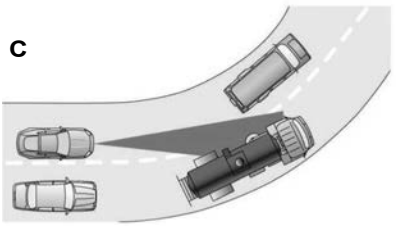
A



B



C



D



A Vehicles that change into your lane directly in front of your vehicle.

B Vehicles that are driving outside the sensor range in close proximity to your vehicle.

C Vehicles in tight bends.

D The system reacts to stationary vehicles to a limited extent. If it detects a stationary vehicle, your vehicle brakes behind the stationary vehicle within the limits of the system.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.
- There are road works, tunnels or toll stations ahead.
- Driving on windy roads.
- Driving on difficult terrain.
- Driving in multi-storey car parks.
- Approaching a railway crossing.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

1.  Press the mode selector button on the left-hand side of the steering-wheel until adaptive cruise control is selected in the instrument cluster display.
2.  The system turns on in standby mode, and the symbol illuminates gray in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *To activate the system, resume the set speed. See* ***Resuming the Set Speed*** *(page 208).*

To turn the system off, select a different driving assist system by pressing the mode selector button with the system in standby.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system could cancel if any of the following occur:

- The tires lose traction.
- The system automatically applies the parking brake.
- Traction control is active.

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if any of the following occur:

- You unfasten the seatbelt and open the door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

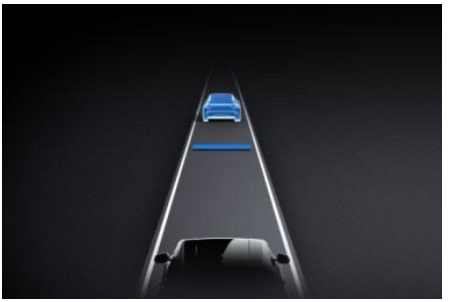


Press the button to set the current speed.

Adaptive cruise control stores the current speed and maintains the set distance.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.*

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
2. SET Press and release the button.

The set speed adjusts to 20 km/h (12 mph).

The indicator and the set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Changing the Set Speed

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments.

Gently press to increase the speed in small increments.

Gently press to decrease the speed in small increments.

Strongly press either of the buttons to adjust the set speed in large increments.

Press and hold the corresponding button to continuously change the stored speed.

If the system detects a speed limit different from the set speed, a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Press either button to set it as the new speed.

If necessary, the system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP

1. Press the button.
2. Press the button to increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.
3. Press the button to decrease the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.

Alternatively:

Press the button repeatedly to select the required distance.

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select five gap settings.

When you start your vehicle, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance.

A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Following a Vehicle to a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for a short period of time, the system remains active. The instrument cluster display shows that the adaptive cruise control is ready to start. If your hands are on the steering wheel, your vehicle automatically accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead within a short period of time.



If your vehicle does not accelerate automatically, you have to press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The indicator lamp lights up gray, the speed and distance remain stored.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Press the button again within a short period of time to set the speed to the previously detected speed limit.

Note: *This feature works only after the system detects a new speed limit.*

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED

WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the part of indicator changes to gray.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The icon changes to indicate the system status.

Indicates the system is on, the system detects no vehicle ahead.



The color of the symbol changes to indicate that the system is on and detects a vehicle ahead.

White indicates that the system is on, but passive.

Blue indicates that the system is active.

LANE CENTERING

HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on highway roads.

Note: *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

If you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

Note: *The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.*

Note: *If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.*

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 203).

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- You activate lane centering using the button on the left side of the steering wheel. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 210).
- The steering wheel sensor detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects lane markings.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the driving lane.

Note: *If the system does not detect a valid lane, the system will remain in standby until a valid lane is available.*

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation.

Lane centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane width is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too small.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If you wear gloves while driving, your hands are not detected on the steering wheel.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When towing a trailer.
- Never use the system offroad or on unsurfaced roads. It is designed solely for use on surfaced roads.
- The system does not react to people, animals, crossing vehicles or vehicles that approaching in the same lane from the opposite direction.

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 209).

Note: *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the left hand side of the steering wheel.



The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display. When the lane centering system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Note: *The lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 209).*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1.  Press the mode selector button on the left-hand side of the steering wheel until adaptive cruise control with lane centering is selected in the instrument cluster display.
2.  The system turns on in standby mode, and the symbol illuminates gray in the instrument cluster display.
3. 

Press the button.

Lane Centering switches to active or passive system status according to the driving situation.

Switching to Adaptive Cruise Control

1.  Press the button with the system in standby.
2.  Select adaptive cruise control in the instrument cluster display.

The vehicle switches from lane centering to adaptive cruise control.

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you fail to do so, the system cancels and driver state assist activates. See **Driver State Assist** (page 42).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *The system could detect a light grip or light touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are on the steering wheel, the color of the indicator changes.

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS


Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray lane lines indicate lane centering is passive.

Blue lane lines indicate lane centering is active.

If the system detects a fault, the symbol illuminates yellow and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Take over steering!	The system requests that you take over the steering wheel.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST

HOW DOES PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST WORK

Predictive speed assist works with adaptive cruise control and adjusts the vehicle speed to the road geometry and to the speed limit detected by the traffic sign recognition system and the navigation data. As the system identifies turns, roundabouts, curves and highway ramps, the vehicle speed temporarily decreases ahead of and during the changing road geometry. When passing new speed signs, the set speed updates. See **Predictive Speed Assist Precautions** (page 212).

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the traffic sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. Predictive speed assist and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Traffic Sign Recognition** (page 248).

Note: *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.*

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions. You may need to override the system by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal if the adjusted speed becomes higher or lower than necessary.

WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.

WARNING: The system does not activate the turn signal.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to predictive speed assist unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a predictive speed assist precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 203).

The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system with the accelerator pedal or cancel the system by applying the brakes.

The system may adapt to various factors such as time of day, lane width. This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

The system may adapt to various drive modes. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 219). This could influence speed adjustments and accelerations.

Note: *The system does not activate the turn signal automatically.*

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST LIMITATIONS

WARNING: The system may not always adjust vehicle speed in certain road or weather conditions such as crossing traffic, yield or stop signs, right of way, traffic lights, speed bumps, rain, snow, fog. You must always apply the brake or accelerator pedal when necessary.

The road geometry and speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: *The system may not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

Detection of road geometry operates only where related information is available. Road geometry information may not be available in some areas.

SWITCHING PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST MODE ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

4. Make the required adjustments.

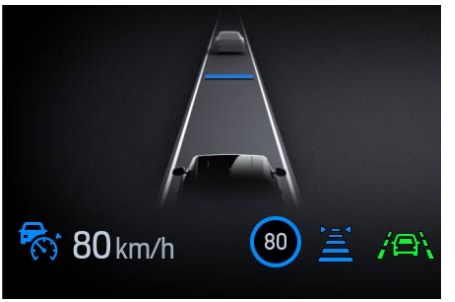
PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

PREDICTIVE SPEED ASSIST INDICATORS

A blue marker around the speed sign and a blue arrow next to the set speed indicates that the system is active.

Speed sign indicator



When the system detects a new speed sign, a gray indicator appears above the set speed while the system adjusts the vehicle speed to the speed limit. When the speed limit is reached, the set speed updates and the gray indicator disappears.

Road geometry indicator

When the system detects a curve, turn, roundabout, or highway exit, the vehicle starts to decelerate, and the indicator appears and changes color.

Road geometry indicator symbols


Left curve.


Right curve.


Curve.


Intersection.


Roundabout.



Speed limit.


End of speed limit.


Highway exit.

Note: *The displayed symbols may differ from the ones displayed in your vehicle. Future system updates may alter or update the symbols.*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS


Illuminates in the instrument cluster, if the system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



If the system cannot brake sufficiently while following a vehicle, the symbol appears on the instrument cluster and an audible warning sounds, prompting you to apply the brakes. Take immediate action.

HOW DOES LANE CHANGE ASSIST WORK

WARNING: Do not use the lane change assist system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The lane change assist system is not a replacement for careful driving.

Lane change assist requirements:

- Adaptive cruise control is active.
- Lane centering is active.
- Lane change assist is only available on roads with multiple driving lanes in the same direction and structural separation between lanes of different driving direction.
- Internet connection is on.
- The use of online map data is active.



Lane change assist can automatically perform a single lane change when you request the lane change using the turn signal lever. This feature is available at 90 km/h (55 mph) and above.

Note: *Make sure the lane you are requesting is clear of traffic or obstacles.*

LANE CHANGE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 203).

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 209).

LANE CHANGE ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Lane change assist will not perform the requested maneuver if traffic is identified in the selected lane.

SWITCHING LANE CHANGE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Make the required adjustments.

ACTIVATING AND DEACTIVATING LANE CHANGE ASSIST

Activating Lane Change Assist

1. 

Press the button while driving.

If all preconditions are met, lane change assist activates. The arrows on your own lane in the instrument cluster display are shown in gray.

Deactivating Lane Change Assist

1.  Briefly press the button.

Alternatively:

1. Press the brake pedal.

Lane change assist and lane centering are deactivated.

LANE CHANGE ASSIST CANCELLATION

To cancel lane change assist, manually steer your vehicle or return the turn signal lever to the middle position.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

LANE CHANGE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE CHANGE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Lane Change Assist stopped. Take control of vehicle!	The system stopped. Take control of the vehicle.
Lane Change Assist stopped. Please take over steering.	The system stopped. Take control of the vehicle.
Lane Change Assist stopped. Brake!	The system stopped. Press the brake pedal.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

HOW DOES DRIVE MODE CONTROL WORK

Selectable drive modes change various electronic settings within your vehicle to tailor its performance and driving characteristics to on-road or off-road conditions. The following controls are automatically altered to a predetermined setting depending on the drive mode that is selected.

- Steering feel and effort.
- Traction control.
- Chassis controls.
- Powertrain response.
- Ambient lighting.

Note: *Your vehicle reverts to normal mode each time you start it.*

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Select the desired drive mode.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

Note: *Drive mode changes may not be available when your vehicle is off.*

DRIVE MODES

ECO

 For efficient driving. This mode helps to deliver maximum energy-efficiency and driving range.

INDIVIDUAL

 For a unique driving experience. You can tailor the individual vehicle systems to suit your personal requirements.

NORMAL

 For everyday driving. This mode is a perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. This is the default mode after each time you switch the vehicle on.

SPORT

 For sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases accelerator pedal response, enhances steering to provide a sportier feel and quicker vehicle acceleration.

TRACTION - AWD

 For improved vehicle traction on less-than-ideal road conditions, such as snowy or icy roads or firm surfaces that are covered with loose or slippery materials.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why did the system default to normal mode?

If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to normal mode.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

Efficient Drive Mode helps you drive more efficiently. It uses predictive route information based on the vehicle navigation data and driving assist system sensors. It provides situation dependent recommendations when to stop accelerating and adjusts brake energy recuperation for the driving situation ahead.

HOW DOES EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE WORK


When you approach a speed limit or a road event, the symbol displays in the instrument cluster display with a second symbol indicating the type of event.

As soon as you take your foot off the accelerator, the vehicle adjusts the brake energy recuperation and the speed. The vehicle takes into account the selected driving profile and the distance to the event.

The system does not use the vehicle brake. When you are driving downhill, the system also cannot sufficiently brake the vehicle in all driving situations.

Note: *When the system is active, Efficient Drive Mode can increase deceleration even without a displayed message, thereby adapting the speed to a detected vehicle ahead.*

Note: *You can override Efficient Drive Mode at any time by accelerating.*

EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

WARNING: Road signs, traffic signals, traffic regulations and local conditions have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the navigation system.

SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF

1. 
Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2. 
Press this icon.
3. 
Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Make the required adjustments.

Efficient Drive Mode automatically turns off temporarily in the following cases:

- Your vehicle is in Sport mode.
- Adaptive cruise control is active.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *Your vehicle may still display efficient drive mode icons, depending on the situation and your driving behavior.*

Note: *If efficient drive mode is off and selector position Drive (D) is selected, your vehicle coasts when you take your foot off the accelerator.*

Efficient drive mode turns on again when the reason for deactivation is no longer present, or if you switch it on.

EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the following symbols, depending on the driving situation:


Take your foot off the accelerator.


Vehicle ahead.


Junction ahead.


Highway exit ahead.


Roundabout ahead.


Bend to the left ahead.


Bend to the right ahead.



Slope ahead.



Speed limit ahead.

Note: *The displayed symbols may differ from the ones displayed in your vehicle. Future system updates may alter or update the symbols.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION INDICATORS

When the feature is active, the system may display the following icons on the navigation screen depending on the driving situation.


Broken down vehicle.


Accident.


Slippery road.

ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

Local hazard information is an extension of the connected navigation feature. Make sure that you enable connected navigation See **Connected Navigation** (page 352).

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limiter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF

1.  Press the mode selector button on the left-hand side of the steering wheel until speed limiter is selected in the instrument cluster display.
2.  The system turns on in standby mode, and the symbol illuminates gray in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *To activate the system, resume set speed. See* ***Resuming the Set Speed*** *(page 208).*

To turn the system off, select a different driving assist system by pressing the mode selector button with the system in standby.

Note: *The system is off and the set speed is deleted.*

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT



Press the button while driving.

Note: *The current speed is stored as the maximum speed.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *When your vehicle is stationary, 30 km/h (19 mph) is set as the default speed limit.*

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments.


Gently press to increase the speed in small increments.


Gently press to decrease the speed in small increments.

Strongly press either of the buttons to adjust the set speed in large increments.

Press and hold the corresponding button to continuously change the stored speed.

If the system detects a speed limit different from the set speed, a message appears in the instrument cluster. Press either button to set it as the new speed.

The set speed is stored as the maximum speed and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.*

Note: *If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.*

If the system detects a higher speed than the stored speed, a message appears in the instrument cluster. To adjust the maximum speed limit to that speed during that prompt, press either of the buttons.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT


Press to cancel the set speed limiter.

The system returns to standby mode and the set speed remains in the memory.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press the button to resume the set speed limiter. The system sets the speed limiter to the detected maximum speed limit at the time it resumes.

Press the button again within a short period of time to set the speed limiter to the previously detected speed limit.

Note: *This feature works only after the system detects a new speed limit.*

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Press the accelerator pedal all the way down, then firmly press the accelerator pedal further down to exceed the set speed limit.

Note: *The system will not resume speed limitation, while you are pressing the pedal in this position.*



Press the button to set the current speed as speed limit.

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS


It illuminates green in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates gray if the system is not active.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds, if the system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range.

Note: *The system stays active.*

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the touchscreen.

1. 
Press this icon.
2. 
Press this icon.
3. 
Press this icon.
4. Make the required adjustments.

Note: *If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to normal speed limiter.*

Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure. The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the travel lane. The lane keeping system is always on when the vehicle is turned on. A system indicator appears in the instrument cluster display.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system is active if lane markings are detected and the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on before changing lane manually.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- You do not react to the driver intervention prompt.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (37 mph).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width and tight bends.

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF

The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Make the required adjustments.

Switching the Steering Wheel Vibration On and Off

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.

Note: *Only if the lane keeping system is active, you can activate steering wheel vibration.*

4. Make the required adjustments.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the system is on and available, a green symbol and white lane markings appear in the instrument cluster display.



The lane markings and the symbol illuminate yellow if the system provides assistance. They illuminate grey if the system is unavailable or in standby mode, for example when the vehicle speed is too low.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



When you switch the system off a yellow off symbol illuminates and the lane markings do not appear.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

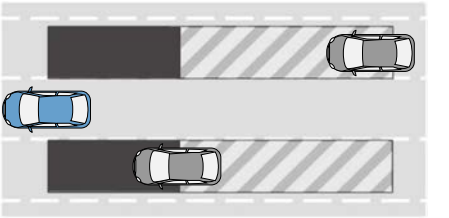
WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The system provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK

Alert mode

If you switch the lane-keeping system off, blind spot assist only works in alert mode. It detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone, and alerts you with a warning lamp. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



Alert and Aid mode

This mode is active when both the lane-keeping system and the blind spot assist are switched on. During lane changes, the system detects vehicles in, or approaching your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane. For more information See **Blind Spot Assist Indicators** (page 231).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Switching Blind Spot Assist On and Off

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Make the required adjustments.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

If you switch the lane-keeping system off, blind spot assist does not provide steering assistance. The lane-keeping system switches on every time you start your vehicle.

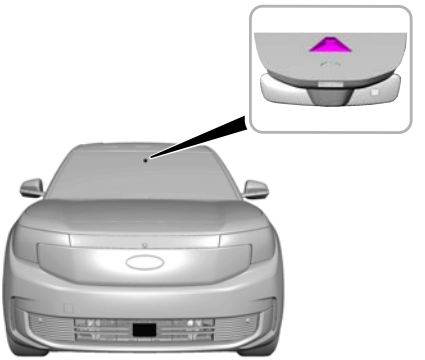
When you switch blind spot assist off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash. Lane keeping system remains on if you switch blind spot assist off. In this case blind spot assist indicators turn off as well.

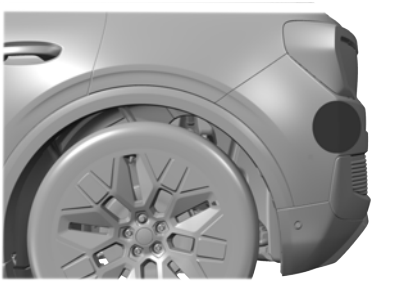
Note: *You can adjust the brightness of the alert indicator in the touchscreen menu.*

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

Locating the Blind Spot Assist System Sensors

The blind spot assist system uses the front camera and rear radar sensors.





The rear sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, something is obstructing the radar signals or camera images.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

Note: *Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.*

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.*

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

Blind Spot Assist System Requirements

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Note: *The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

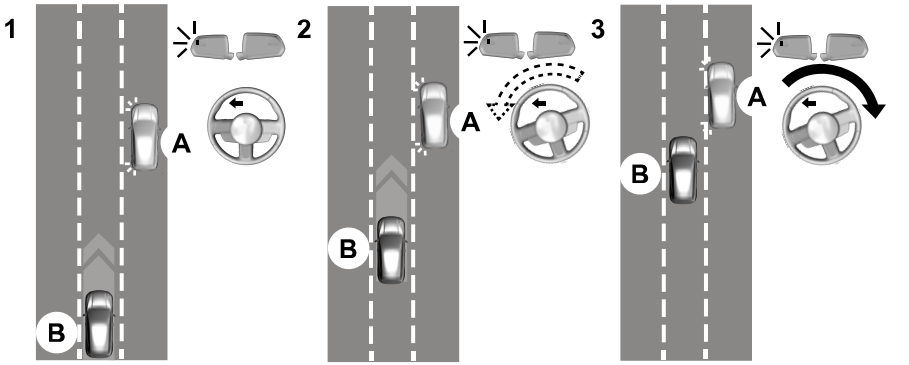


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot assist system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane-keeping system warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection.

Blind Spot Assist - Warning Lamps



If the system detects a fault, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Rear carrier/trailer: Blind Spot Assist is unavailable.	Displays if you attach bike carrier, cargo racks or a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist is unavailable. Sensor impaired.	Displays if the blind spot assist system sensors are blocked.
Error: Blind Spot Assist	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *If a message regarding BLIS appears in the information display, the same details apply as for the Blind Spot Assist System.*

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

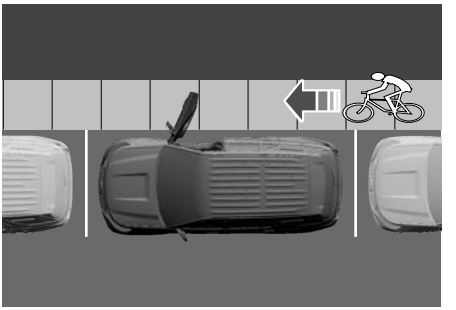
Message	Details
Error: Lane-Keeping System	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Lane-Keeping System is currently unavailable.	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Driver Assistance is currently restricted. Front sensor impaired.	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Please drive in the centre of the lane.	The system requests that you keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.
Take over steering!	The system requests that you take over the steering wheel.

WHAT IS EXIT WARNING

Exit warning is designed to provide a visual and audible alert when a vehicle occupant opens a door into approaching traffic. It uses radar sensors to alert you to traffic objects approaching your open door.

HOW DOES EXIT WARNING WORK

Exit warning detects traffic objects such as vehicles, cyclists, scooters and motorcycles that approach your vehicle from the rear and cross into the exit warning zone. The exit warning zones are along the left and right sides of your vehicle, extending past a fully open door.



Note: *The system cannot detect animals, slow moving pedestrians or any type of stationary object.*

EXIT WARNING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning is only active when your vehicle is on.

WARNING: Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

EXIT WARNING LIMITATIONS

Exit warning shuts off approximately three minutes after your vehicle is switched off, or immediately after you lock your doors. When the vehicle battery is low and your vehicle is switched off, exit warning shuts off to conserve battery power. When exit warning turns off, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *Do not use exit warning as a replacement for paying attention when exiting your vehicle.*

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles by closing the doors automatically.*

Note: *The system may not inform and/or alert you if a traffic object is approaching too quickly or if the parking position prevents detection.*

EXIT WARNING INDICATORS



Exit Warning has two stages to indicate an approaching traffic object. If you open a door and exit warning detects an approaching traffic object, the corresponding alert indicator in the exterior mirror flashes and an audible alert sounds. If you open a door before exit warning detects an approaching traffic object the same alert indicator illuminates. In this case there is no audible alert. See **Blind Spot Assist Indicators** (page 231).

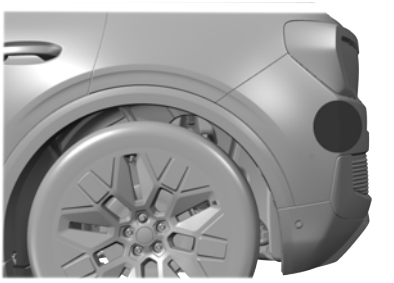
SWITCHING EXIT WARNING ON AND OFF

You can switch off the exit warning system by using the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon and enter the relevant menu to switch the feature on or off.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

LOCATING THE EXIT WARNING SENSORS



The sensors are mounted behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

EXIT WARNING – TROUBLESHOOTING

EXIT WARNING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

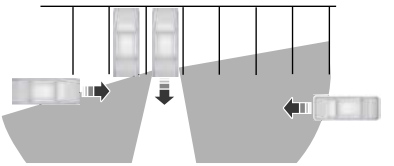
Message	Details
Exit Warning, Blind Spot Assist and Cross-Traffic Alert are unavailable.	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Error: Blind Spot Assist, Exit Warning and Cross-Traffic Alert	Displays if the exit warning system detects any system error.

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

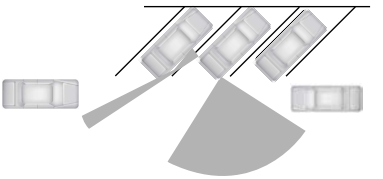
The system is designed to alert you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R). If you continue to reverse after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects an approaching vehicle. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a Ford approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon and enter the relevant menu to switch the feature on or off.

Note: *The system switches on every time you switch the vehicle on.*

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

Note: *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle the obstacle area appears in color in the center display. A yellow colored area indicates a lower warning level. A red colored area together with an audible warning indicates an increased warning level.

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Exit Warning, Blind Spot Assist and Cross-Traffic Alert are unavailable.	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Error: Blind Spot Assist, Exit Warning and Cross-Traffic Alert	Displays if the cross traffic alert system detects any system error.

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing five levels of assistance.

Level of Assistance	Details
Distance warning	The system detects when safety is endangered by driving too close to the vehicle in front. The indicator lamp lights up. Increase the distance.
Advance warning	The system detects a possible collision and prepares the brakes for rapid braking. An acoustic warning sounds and the red warning lamp lights up. Brake or take avoiding action.
Urgent warning	If the driver does not react to the advance warning, the system may initiate a short braking jolt in order to draw attention to the increasing collision risk. Brake or take avoiding action.
Automatic braking	The system can brake the vehicle automatically in several stages with increasing braking force. The reduced speed means that it is possible to reduce impact or avoid the crash.
Braking intervention	If the system detects that the driver brakes insufficiently when there is a risk of collision, it increases the braking force and helps to prevent a collision. The braking intervention takes place only for as long as the driver presses the brake pedal hard.

Pre-collision assist includes the following additional functions:

- Evasive Steering Assist.
- Intersection Assist.
- Automatic Emergency Braking - Oncoming Vehicles.

The listed functions are automatically active when pre-collision assist is switched on.

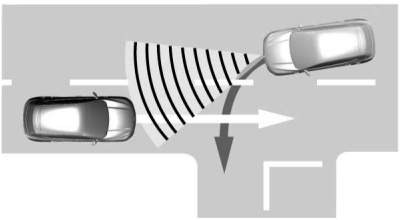
Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Automatic Emergency Braking - Oncoming Vehicles

Automatic emergency braking oncoming expands the function of pre-collision assist to oncoming vehicles within your same lane. The system can help to reduce the severity of a crash by providing a warning to you as well as automatically applying the brakes. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle above30 km/h (19 mph).

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK

The pre-collision assist system could apply brakes if you are turning across an oncoming vehicle's path. Detection of vehicles driving in an oncoming direction is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 20 km/h (12 mph).



PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and radar sensors. Any obstruction or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning.

The system is active if your vehicle speed is greater than 5 km/h (3 mph) and above.

Note: *Brake support and automatic emergency braking are active up to the maximum speed of the vehicle.*

Pre-collision assist cannot react or reacts with a delay in the following situations:

- In tight bends.
- Driving in multi-storey car parks and tunnels.
- Approaching a railway crossing.
- Reversing.
- If stability control is performing a control intervention or faulty.
- If several brake lights on the vehicle are faulty.
- If there is a fault in several brake lights on a trailer or bicycle carrier with an electrical connection to the vehicle.
- If the vehicle accelerates hard or the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.
- When driving into and out of tunnels.
- If there is a fault in pre-collision assist.
- Vehicles that are driving outside the sensor range in close proximity to your vehicle.
- Vehicles that change into your lane directly in front of your vehicle.
- Vehicles with trailers.

Pre-collision assist provides maximum assistance in the following situations:

Vehicle Detection Limitations

Vehicle detection is active at speeds up to 250 km/h (155 mph).

Vehicle detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where vehicles are partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.

Pedestrian Detection Limitations

Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 85 km/h (53 mph).

Pedestrian detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.

Cyclist Detection Limitations

Cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 250 km/h (155 mph).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Cyclist detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. The system detection level may be reduced in situations where cyclists are moving fast, partly hidden, have a complex background, or the system cannot distinguish the cyclist from a group.

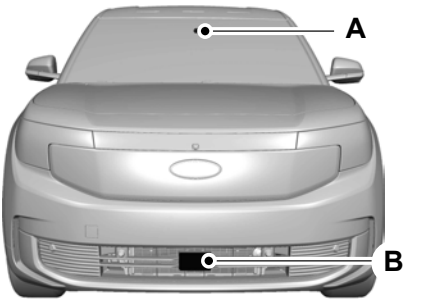
SWITCHING PRE-COLLISION ASSIST ON AND OFF

You can switch off the pre-collision assist system by using the touchscreen. We do not recommend deactivating the system. You need to confirm deactivation.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Make the required adjustments.

Note: *Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering automatically turn on every time you start your vehicle.*

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS



A Camera.

B Radar sensor.

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

Note: *If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.*

A message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the instrument cluster display if the radar or camera images are obstructed.

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: *Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See* ***Pre-Collision Assist Precautions*** *(page 241).*

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist does not function when road users and animals are crossing the road. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 241).

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Enter the relevant menu to switch the feature on or off.

Note: *Evasive steering assist turns on each time you switch your vehicle on.*

Note: *If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS

 It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

 It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is unavailable, or the functions are restricted immediately after switching your vehicle on. The Automatic Emergency Braking system is available after the indicator lamp turns off when driving straight ahead for a short period of time.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when switching the system off. Switching the system off turns all functions off.



It illuminates when safety is endangered by driving too close to the vehicle in front.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-Collision Assist is unavailable.	The system has malfunctioned. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Driver Assistance is currently restricted. Front sensor impaired.	You have a blocked radar sensor or camera due to bad weather, ice, mud or water, or the view of the radar sensor or camera is impaired by add-on parts or stickers. Clean the radar sensor and the windscreen and keep these areas free.
Take control of the vehicle.	Take control of the vehicle immediately if requested.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system has three warning levels:

1. The system issues a temporary warning and a tone sounds to advise you to take a rest.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues an additional warning.
3. If you continue driving the system issues a third warning and the rate of the tone increases.

The warnings only appear for a short period of time. Press OK on the steering wheel to quit the warning message earlier.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

4. Make the required adjustments.

Note: *You can only make the required adjustments when your vehicle is on.*

Note: *The system turns on automatically after switching your vehicle off and on again.*

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an issue, for example, the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Tiredness detected. Take a break!	Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.

WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations.

HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Detected traffic signs appear in the instrument cluster display. The sensor is behind the interior mirror.

The system turns on when you switch the vehicle on and you cannot switch the system off.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

Note: *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

Traffic sign recognition may not operate correctly due to the following:

- In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.
- The screen is dirty in the area of the camera.
- Glare, for example from the oncoming traffic or sunlight.
- High speed.
- Signs located outside of the field of view of the camera.
- Partially or fully hidden road signs.
- Non-standard road signs.
- Missed recognition of faded, dirty or distorted signs.
- Outdated map data.
- Vehicles with road sign stickers.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays in the instrument cluster display or in the head-up display. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

Note: *If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.*



When the system does not detect a speed sign, for example, navigation map data is not available for a short period of time, or the system has no input, a speed sign with two hyphens appears in the instrument cluster display.



When the system is off or has an issue, for example, navigation map data is not available for a longer period of time, or the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear although the system is on have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

No-entry warning

If the system detects a no-entry sign on a one-way road or motorway slip road, it sounds a tone and display a message on the instrument cluster display.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning

If the system detects that an applicable speed limit has been exceeded, it issues a visual warning or displays a message on the instrument cluster display and sounds a tone.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *The system turns on automatically after switching the vehicle off and on again. You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.*

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Make the required adjustments.

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Chime for Speed Limit Change

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon or select it from the list.
4. Make the required adjustments.

Note: *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

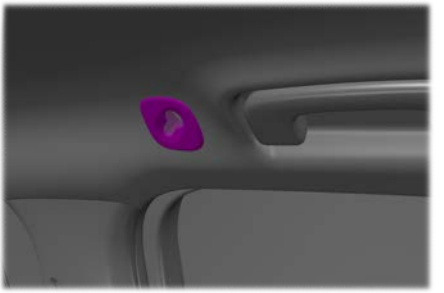
Message	Details
Traffic Sign Recognition currently restricted.	The traffic sign data provided by the system is unavailable. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Traffic Sign Recognition is currently unavailable.	The traffic sign data provided by the system is unavailable. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

PARTITIONING SYSTEM

A partitioning system compliant to ISO 27955 is available as an aftermarket accessory from our authorized dealers.

Note: *Passengers should not travel in the rear seats if you install the partitioning system behind the front seats.*



Note: *Make sure to fix the partitioning system through the headliner hole into the metal structure behind the headliner or the side trim opening.*

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

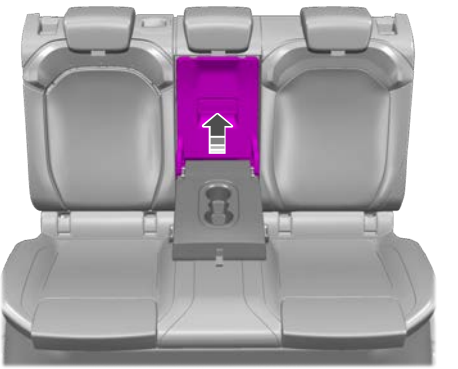
WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

REAR LOADSPACE HATCH

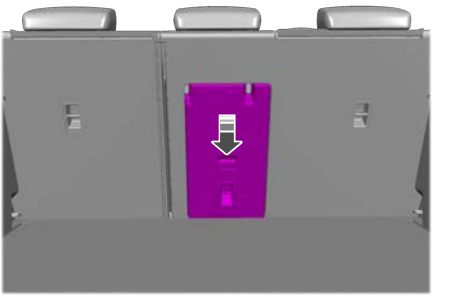
You can use the rear loadspace hatch behind the rear seat foldable armrest to transport long objects, such as skis.

Opening the Rear Loadspace Hatch from the Passenger Area



1. Fold down the rear seat armrest.
2. Pull the handle up and open the hatch.

Opening the Rear Loadspace Hatch from the Luggage Compartment



Pull the handle down and open the hatch.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

WARNING: Do not switch off stability control or use Sport mode when carrying a roof load. This could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Note: *If you use a roof rack, the energy consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each charge stop.

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

Description	Maximum Recommended Load	
	Vehicles with Glass Roof	Vehicles without Glass Roof
When in motion	75 kg (165 lb)	75 kg (165 lb)
When stationary	300 kg (661 lb)	300 kg (661 lb)

Note: *The maximum roof load is based on evenly distributing the load on the crossbars.*

Note: *When using a roof rack system, subtract the weight of the roof rack system from the maximum recommended load to determine your actual maximum cargo load. See the roof rack system manufacturer for more information.*

Note: *Only use roof racks released by Ford Motor Company on vehicles with glass roof. Roof racks not released by Ford may cause damage to the glass roof.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER

TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Cargo accessory devices mounted to the hitch can change the weight distribution of the vehicle. Loaded vehicles, with more rear weight, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

When using a tow bar mounted carrier, consider the following:

- Carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any cargo carrying device.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure to property attach the cargo carrying device, and securely attach all equipment to the cargo carrying device.
- When loading a cargo accessory device to the hitch, do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight or maximum front and rear axle weights on the vehicle as defined on the vehicle identification plate. Mounting cargo accessory devices to the hitch limits the passenger and cargo capacity inside the vehicle.
- If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum allowed weight is 75 kg (165 lb) including the bikes and the carrier.
- Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.

TOW BAR MOUNTED LOAD CAPACITIES

The maximum accessory hitch load for cargo carrying devices is 75 kg (165 lb) unless restricted by lower hitch capacity or cargo carrying device capacity. We recommend using a hitch authorized by us which meets these load requirements. Do not exceed any certified vehicle loads as defined on the Vehicle Identification Plate.

LOAD CARRYING VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Explorer Opening and Closing the Rear Loadspace Hatch Video Link

For more information scan here:

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Note: *When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.*

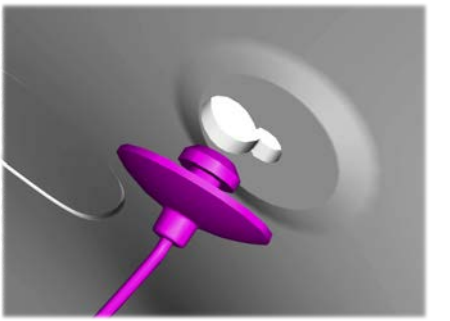
INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT CARGO NET

WARNING: This net is not designed to restrain objects during a collision or heavy braking.

The luggage floor net secures lightweight objects in the luggage compartment area. Attach the net to the anchors on both sides of the luggage compartment. See **Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points** (page 257).

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER

To remove the luggage cover:



1. Gently push the retaining clips forward and pull them out on both sides.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



2. Lift the luggage cover out of the liftgate hooks.

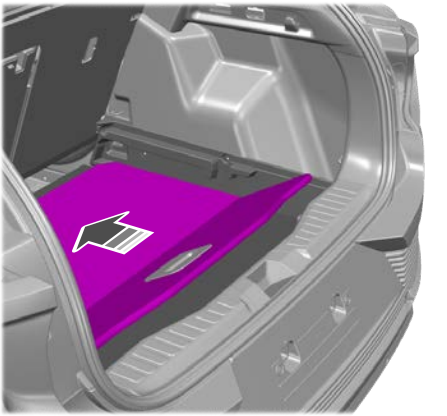
To install, reverse the removal procedure.

ADJUSTING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT LOAD FLOOR

Lowering the Load Floor

You can lower the load floor to increase the available loadspace height.

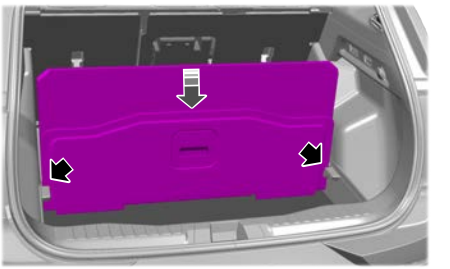
1. Remove the load floor.



2. Slightly fold it and slide it fully back below the side support rails.

Dividing the Luggage Compartment

1. Remove the load floor.

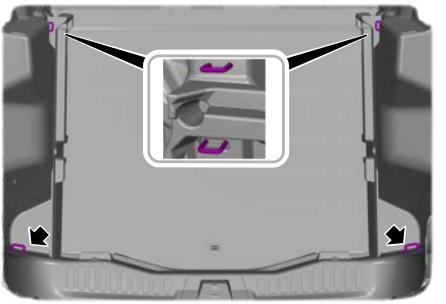


2. Fold it in half and place it upright between the retention slots on both sides.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS

LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT ANCHOR POINTS



LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

For more information scan here:

Explorer Luggage Compartment Video Link

CONNECTING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

TOW BALL

TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

You must retract the tow ball arm when not in use.

Do not use any tools to deploy or retract the tow ball arm.

Never retract the tow ball arm with a trailer attached. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks

After you deploy the tow ball arm, check the following:

- Make sure the tow ball arm is fully locked.
- The LED is not flashing.
- The tow ball arm symbol is not illuminating.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TOW BALL LIMITATIONS

The tow ball arm does not retract or deploy if any of the following occur:

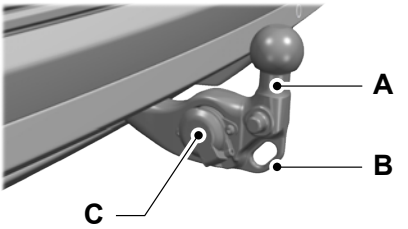
- The electric parking brake is not active.
- The trailer wiring connection socket has a trailer wiring plug attached to it.
- The vehicle battery is not fully charged.
- The rear liftgate is closed.

TOW BALL ARM GUIDELINES

- The tow ball arm mechanism is maintenance free. Do not grease or oil the mechanism.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Clean the trailer wiring connection socket regularly and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you retract the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.
- When the tow bar is not in use, always retract the tow ball arm.
- It is advisable that you deploy and retract the tow ball arm at least once per month.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

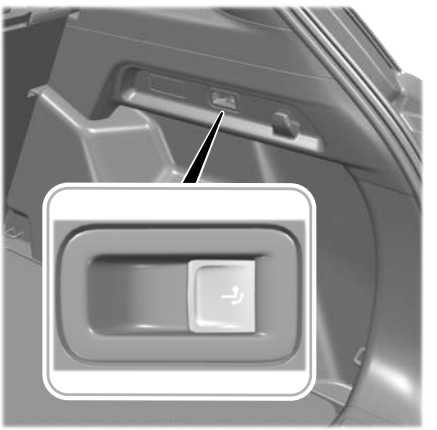
TOW BALL COMPONENTS



A	Tow ball arm in tow position.
B	Trailer safety cable attachment point.
C	Trailer wiring connection socket.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm or mechanism.

DEPLOYING THE TOW BALL ARM



1. Power your vehicle off.
2. Pull the release switch. It is on the right-hand side in the luggage compartment.

Note: *The LED on the switch flashes when the tow ball arm is released.*

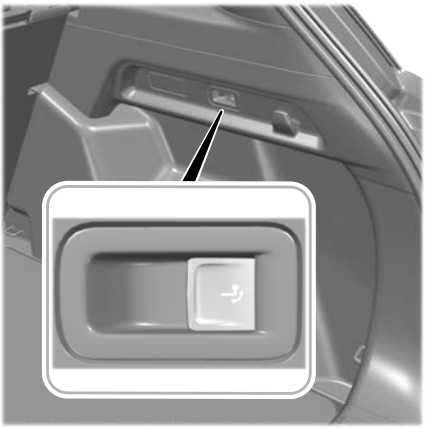
3. Manually move the tow ball arm into the tow position. Make sure the tow ball arm fully locks into position and the LED continuously illuminates.

Note: *When the liftgate is open, the LED continuously illuminates to indicate that the tow ball arm is fully locked in either of its end positions.*

Note: *After you close the liftgate, the LED stops illuminating after about one minute.*

RETRACTING THE TOW BALL ARM

1. Power your vehicle off.
2. Disconnect the trailer wiring plug and unhitch the trailer or load carrier.



3. Pull the release switch. It is on the right-hand side in the luggage compartment.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *The LED on the switch flashes when the tow ball arm is released.*

4. Manually move the tow ball arm into the stowed position. Make sure the tow ball arm fully locks into position and the LED continuously illuminates.

Note: *When the liftgate is open, the LED continuously illuminates to indicate that the tow ball arm is fully locked in either of its end positions.*

Note: *After you close the liftgate, the LED stops illuminating after about one minute.*

CONNECTING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTING A TRAILER – WARNING LAMPS



If the tow ball arm indicator illuminates yellow after you deploy the tow ball arm, this indicates a malfunction. See **Tow Ball Precautions** (page 258).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 264).

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% when towing a trailer. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 332).

Towing a trailer also depends on additional systems present in your vehicle. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 203). See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 209).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

LOADING YOUR TRAILER

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 262). See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 262).

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.*

TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

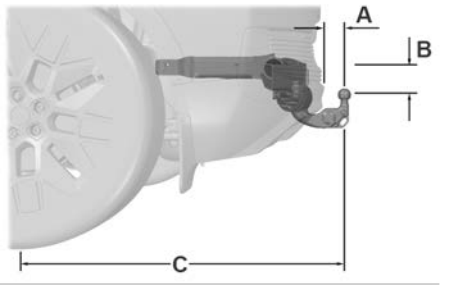
TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

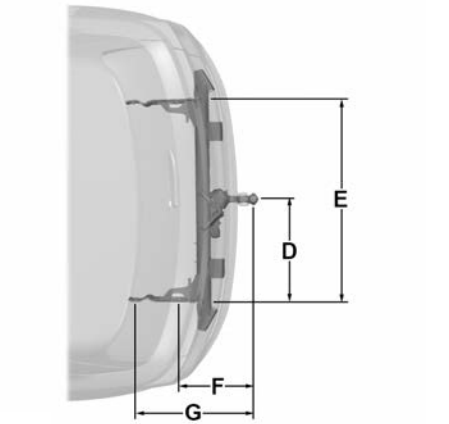
TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Variant	kg (lb)
All	75 (165)

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS





Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	75 (3)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	98 (4)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	924 (36)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	497 (20)

Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
E	Distance between side members.	994 (39)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	361 (14)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	581 (23)

HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces electric motor output to aid vehicle stability.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

Note: *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25ºC (-13ºF).

DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE

WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 175).

BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

DRIVING IN SPECIAL CONDITIONS - LHD 4WD/RHD 4WD

DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

Water

If you must drive through water approach it cautiously. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 266).

DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

Note: *Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.*

DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the information display. See **All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages** (page 174).

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER

WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ELECTRIC VEHICLE

MAXIMIZING YOUR DRIVING RANGE

Driving in Cold Weather

Keep your vehicle charged before heading out into cold weather.

Use the heated seats and steering wheel for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce energy needed for climate control.

Note: *Lower cabin temperature settings on the climate control system results in better trip range.*

Preconditioning Your Vehicle

You can precondition your vehicle before departure with your preferred temperature settings. By using energy from your charging source prior to your departure, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy will be needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range. See **Remote Start Settings** (page 109).

Parking Your Vehicle

At temperatures just above the freezing point and lower, plug your vehicle in when not in use to maintain high voltage battery performance.

When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This will help to moderate temperatures which affect performance of the high voltage battery and require energy to heat or cool the cabin.

Driving Style

Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could also result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan.

You can charge the high-voltage battery while driving by using brake energy recuperation. See **What Is Efficient Drive Mode** (page 221).

Driving Economically

The following also helps to improve energy consumption:

- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes energy.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

FLOOR MATS

WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 5 m (16 ft) away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 15 m (49 ft) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF

The hazard flashers operate with the power on or off. The battery loses charge and may have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.



The hazard flasher button is on the center console. Press the button to switch on the hazard flashers if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear turn signals flash.

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: *This procedure is only for the 12 volt under hood battery.*

Note: *Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery that is easily accessible under the hood. The 12 volt battery controls the switches and contacts that engage the high voltage battery. Do not jump start the high voltage battery using a standard 12 volt battery. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer if the high voltage battery does not accept a regular charge.*

Note: *Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You could cause transmission damage.*

Note: *Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.*

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

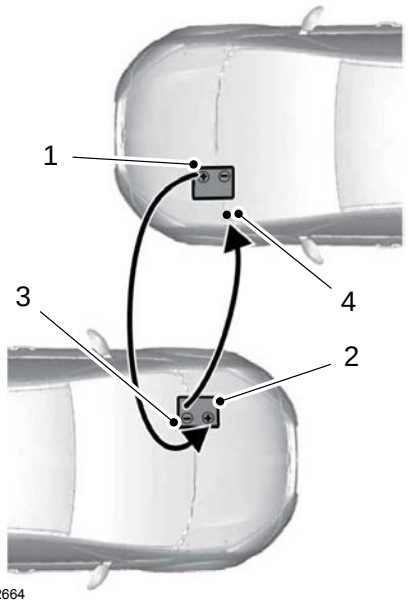
Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.*

Note: *For technical reasons, your vehicle must not be tow-started. If the vehicle's drive system cannot be activated because the 12 V vehicle battery is discharged, you can use the 12 V vehicle battery in another vehicle to activate the vehicle's drive system.*

Note: *The jump start connection points on electric vehicles are not suitable for being used to jump start other vehicles.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Connecting the Jumper Cables



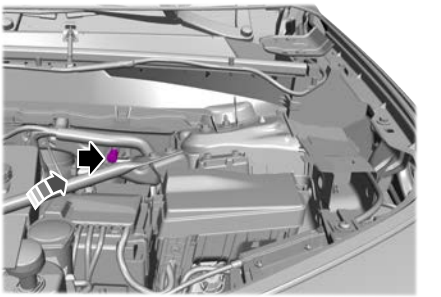
E142664

Switch your vehicle off and any electrical equipment. Lift up the battery positive connection point cover. For battery location, refer to the appropriate under hood overview. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 288).

WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) jump terminal of the discharged battery vehicle.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.



WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) ground point of the discharged battery vehicle.

To start your vehicle

1. Run the engine of the booster vehicle at a moderately high speed.
2. Move the transmission selector lever of the low charge vehicle to park (P).
3. Switch on the ready to drive mode. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 138).

Note: *Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could damage the bulbs.*

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or power your vehicle off and on to switch the system off.

Note: *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

POST-COLLISION BRAKING

How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

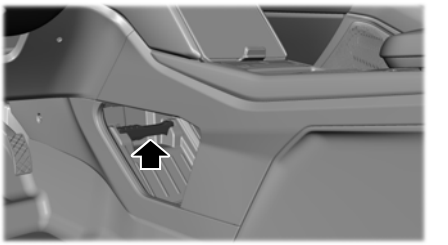
Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if the anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.

Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the accelerator pedal.

ACCESSING THE EMERGENCY EXIT



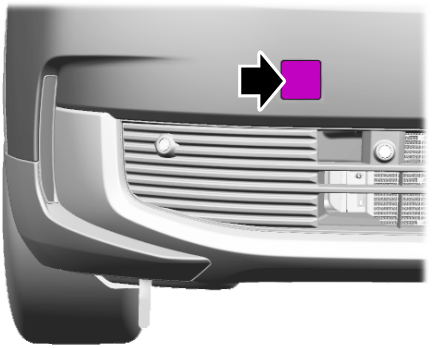
The emergency hammer is located at the lower front in the center console.

Break the side or rear window glass close to the frame with the hammer in an emergency.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

RECOVERY TOWING

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



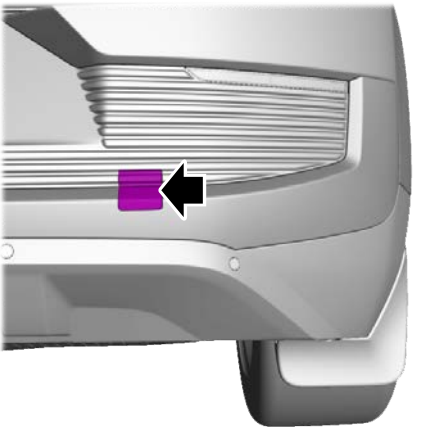
The front towing point is on the right-hand side of the front bumper.

To remove the cover:

1. Gently press the left side of the cover inward.
2. Gently lift the cover on the right side and pull it straight out.

Note: *The cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.*

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT



The rear towing point is on the right-hand side of the rear bumper.

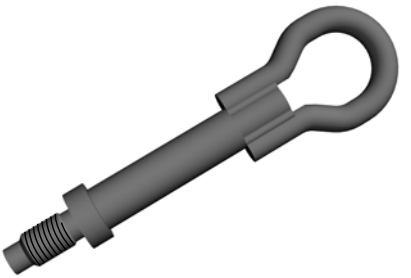
To remove the cover:

1. Gently press the top of the cover inward.
2. Gently lift the cover upward and then pull it straight out.

Note: *The cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



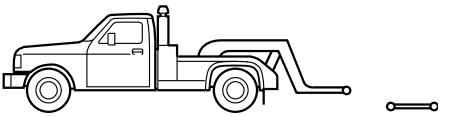
The towing eye is in the storage space below the lower load floor. See **Locating the Luggage Compartment Under Floor Storage** (page 137).

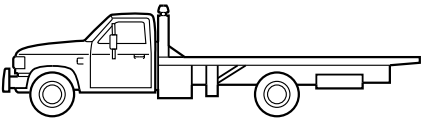
INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE

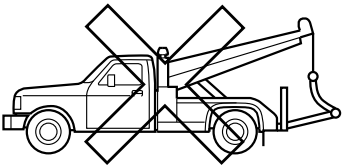
WARNING: Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Insert the towing eye into the towing point and turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that you fully tighten the recovery hook.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE







If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle.

Towing your vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground. This prevents damage to the vehicle.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

WARNING: When towing your vehicle you must select neutral (N).

Note: *Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.*

Note: *If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.*

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Your vehicle is in accessory mode or switched on before being towed.
- The position selector is in neutral (N).
- Maximum permissible towing speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum permissible towing distance is 50 km (31 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle being towed. Only use the towing eye provided as original equipment with your vehicle. See **Locating the Towing Eye** (page 274).

Place tow ropes or rigid towing bars on the same side. For example, right-hand rear towing point to right-hand front towing point.

Only use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.

Note: *Using a rigid towing bar is the safest way to tow a vehicle.*

The weight of the vehicle being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Do not flat-tow your vehicle in the following situations:

- The power supply for the 12 V vehicle electrical system cannot be guaranteed.
- The 12 V vehicle battery is discharged. The steering remains locked and the parking brake and steering column lock cannot be released if applied previously.
- The instrument cluster display does not work properly.
- Neutral (N) position is not available.
- You cannot ensure the steering function or the operation of the wheels after an accident.

Do not flat-tow your vehicle if the following red warning lamp and text message appears on the instrument cluster display:



Towing damages electric drive.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

If you cannot tow your vehicle on its own wheels due to one of the above conditions, seek expert assistance and have your vehicle transported. See **Transporting the Vehicle** (page 274).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

STORING A FIRST AID KIT

You can store a first aid kit behind the rubber strap on the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE

You can store a warning triangle behind the rubber strap on the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

FUSE PRECAUTIONS

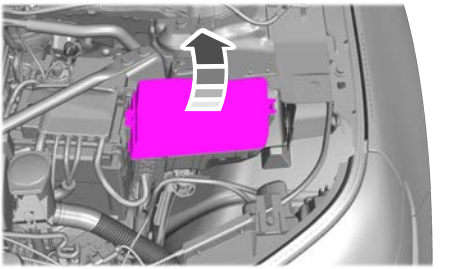
WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

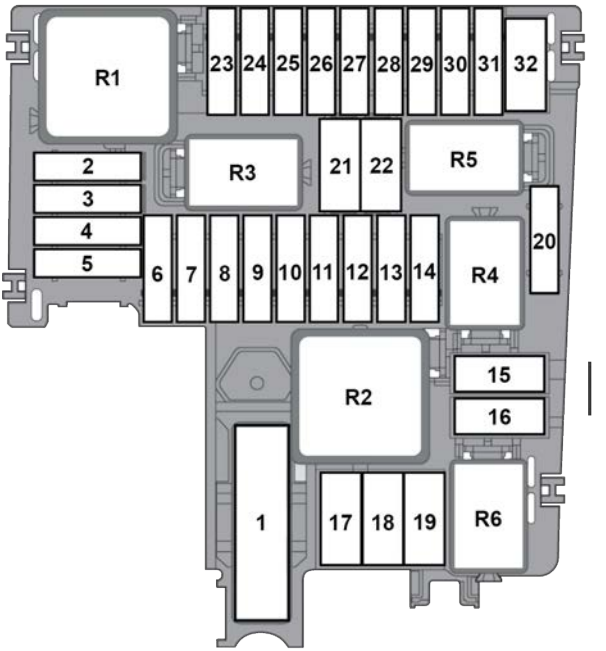
UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	7.5 A	Powertrain control module relay. ABS-ESP control module.
3	15 A	Inverter front powertrain. Inverter rear powertrain. Onboard charger.
4	30 A	Left-hand headlamp.
5	30 A	Right-hand headlamp.
6	7.5 A	Front radar distance control.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

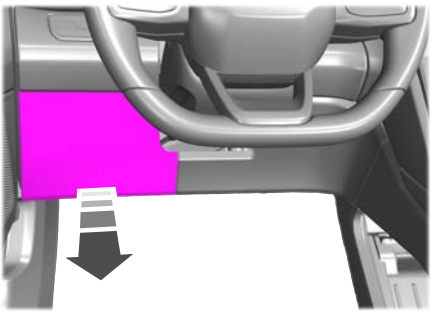
Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
7	—	Not used.
8	—	Not used.
9	15 A	Horn.
10	30 A	Windshield wiper.
11	7.5 A	Air conditioning system.
12	7.5 A	Pedestrian alert system.
13	25 A	ABS-ESP control module.
14	—	Not used.
15	40 A	ABS-ESP control module.
16	50 A	Cooling fan.
17	—	Not used.
18	—	Not used.
19	—	Not used.
20	—	Not used.
21	—	Not used.
22	—	Not used.
23	10 A	Powertrain control module.
24	5 A	Cooling fan control module.
25	15 A	Coolant pump. HV traction battery pre-heater.
26	15 A	Coolant pump. Radiator shutter.
27	—	Not used.
28	—	Not used.
29	—	Not used.
30	—	Not used.
31	—	Not used.
32	50 A	Brake booster.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

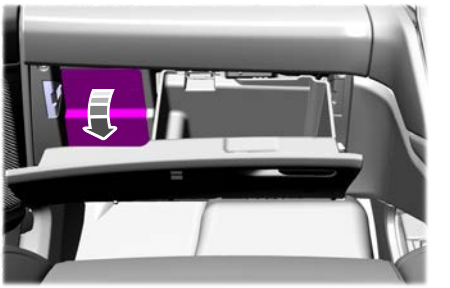
Relay Number	Rating	Relay function
R1	40 A	Powertrain control module relay.
R2	—	
R3	20 A	Horn relay.
R4	—	
R5	—	
R6	20 A	Air conditioning system relay.

INTERIOR FUSE BOX

ACCESSING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX - LHD

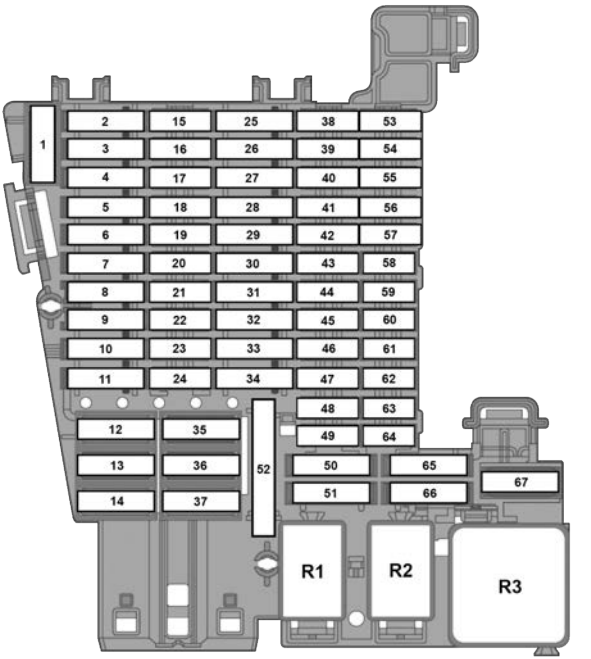


ACCESSING THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX - RHD



Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE INTERIOR FUSE BOX



Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	15 A	Restraints control module.
3	25 A	Trailer tow control module.
4	7.5 A	Front camera assistance system.
5	25 A	Body control module. Left-hand exterior lamps.
6	30 A	Body control module. Interior lighting. Ambient lighting module. Trunk lighting.

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Vanity mirror.
7	30 A	Heated front seats.
8	—	Not used.
9	30 A	Left-hand front door module. Left-hand rear door module.
10	—	Not used.
11	15 A	Trailer tow control module.
12	—	Not used.
13	40 A	Body control module. Liftgate locking system. Dual washer system.
14	30 A	Amplifier.
15	—	Not used.
16	10 A	Not used.
17	5 A	Parking assist control module. Blind spot detection control modules.
18	5 A	Keyless access control module. Keyless access sensors. Steering column lock. Hands-free liftgate control module.
19	5 A	Instrument cluster. On-board communication control module.
20	7.5 A	Phone wireless charger.
21	7.5 A	Top-view camera control module. Rear view camera.
22	10 A	Powertrain control module.
23	5 A	Trans-receiver control module.
24	10 A	USB port center console.
25	—	Not used.
26	30 A	Right-hand front door module. Right-hand rear door module.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

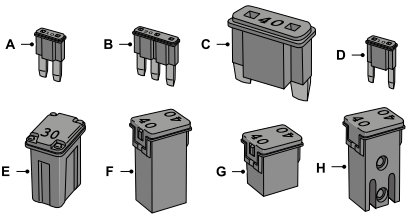
Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
27	—	Not used.
28	10 A	HV traction battery service disconnect. HV safety line.
29	15 A	Trailer tow control module.
30	20 A	Multi-function display.
31	25 A	Trailer tow control module.
32	25 A	Body control module. Right-hand exterior lamps.
33	—	Not used.
34	15 A	Air conditioning control module.
35	—	Not used.
36	40 A	Blower regulator control module.
37	30 A	Rear liftgate control module.
38	7.5 A	Front seat lumbar control module.
39	15 A	Steering column control module.
40	10 A	Anti-theft alarm.
41	5 A	Data gateway control module.
42	10 A	USB port second row
43	7.5 A	Interior temperature sensor. Heated rear window relay. Interior carbon-dioxide sensor.
44	7.5 A	Light switch. Rain and light sensor. Anti-theft sensor. On-board diagnostic interface. External function panel. Headliner control module. Power window control panel.
45	5 A	Steering column control module.
46	10 A	Center display. Head-up display.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
47	15 A	Center display movement system.
48	—	Not used.
49	—	Not used.
50	—	Not used.
51	—	Not used.
52	20 A	Trunk 12V power socket.
53	—	Not used.
54	—	Not used.
55	—	Not used.
56	—	Not used.
57	—	Not used.
58	—	Not used.
59	7.5 A	Trunk 12V power socket relay.
60	7.5 A	On-board diagnostic interface.
61	5 A	Inverter front powertrain. Inverter rear powertrain.
62	—	Not used.
63	7.5 A	Not used.
64	7.5 A	Auto-dimming interior mirror.
65	—	Not used.
66	15 A	Rear window wiper.
67	30 A	Heated rear window.

Relay Number	Rating	Relay function
R1	20 A	Trunk 12V power socket relay.
R2	20 A	Switched positive relay.
R3	40 A	Heated rear window relay.

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



A Micro 2.
B Micro 3.
C Maxi.
D Mini.
E M Case.
F J Case.
G J Case Low Profile.
H Slotted M Case.

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

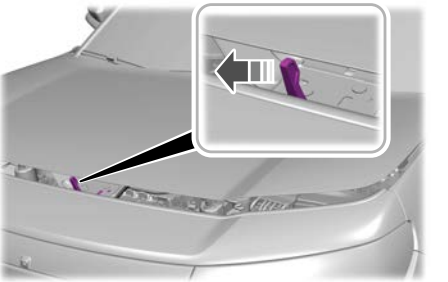
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 328).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

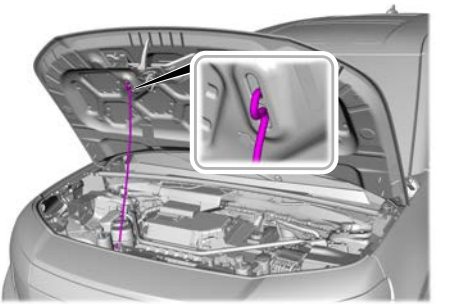
Opening the Hood



1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
2. Slightly lift the hood.



3. Move the catch to the left.
4. Open the hood.



5. Support the hood with the strut.

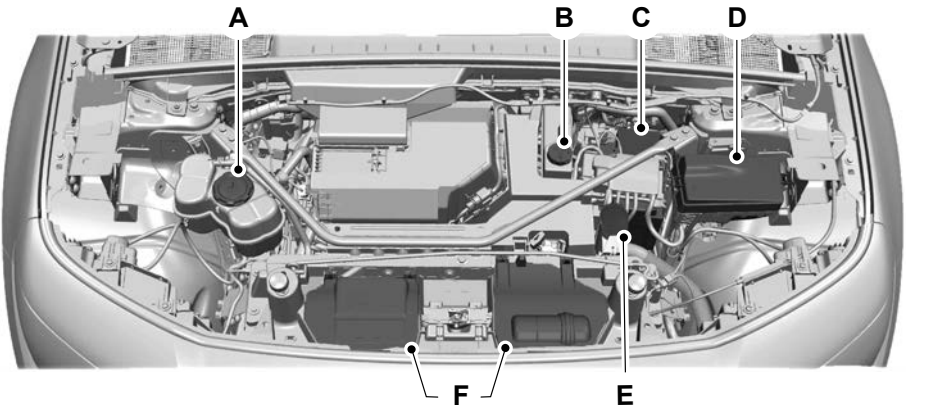
Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly after use.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm (8–12 in).

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - LHD



A Coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 290).

B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 175).

C 12 V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 294).

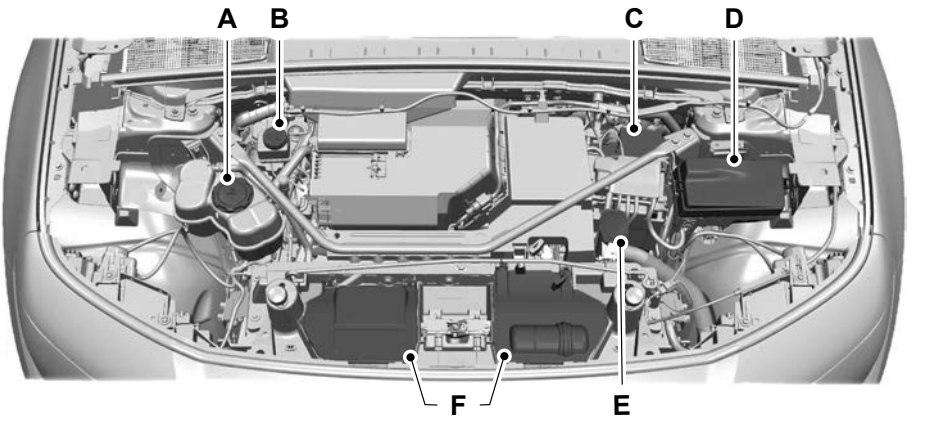
D Under hood fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 278).

E Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 74).

F Tire sealant inflator kit. See **What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit** (page 315).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - RHD



A Coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 290).

B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 175).

C 12 V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 294).

D Under hood fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 278).

E Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 74).

F Tire sealant inflator kit. See **What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit** (page 315).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

COOLANT

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

When the electric motor is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at regular intervals.



A maximum level
B minimum level

Note: *Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and maximum marks on the coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the maximum mark. This is normal.*

Note: *Do not add coolant if there is no coolant visible in the coolant reservoir. Air may have entered the cooling system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Maintain coolant concentration within 45% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30ºC (-22ºF) and -35ºC (-31ºF).

The proportion of the coolant must always be at least 45% to protect the cooling system but should not exceed 55% even in extremely cold climates.

Note: *The coolant additive is violet in color. The coolant color results from mixing the purple coolant additive with distilled water. If the liquid in the coolant reservoir is not violet but brown, the suitable coolant has been mixed with another unsuitable coolant. It can result in malfunctions or damage to the cooling system.*

ADDING COOLANT

WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the ***MAX*** mark.

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.*

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the electric motor cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 328). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the electric motor or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Allow the cooling system to cool down.
3. Open the bonnet. The coolant reservoir is identified by the red symbol on the cap. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 288). See **Under Hood Overview** (page 289).
4. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
5. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 329).
6. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
7. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
8. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

Operating your vehicle with a low level of coolant can result in overheating and possible electric motor damage.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS

Yellow Warning Lamp



If it illuminates yellow, the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is low.

Note: *A pop-up message appears on the instrument cluster.*

Red Warning Lamp



If it illuminates red, the electric motor or high voltage battery begins to overheat.

Note: *A pop-up message appears on the instrument cluster.*

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Power your vehicle off.
3. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Please check coolant level. Refer to Owner's Manual.	Displays when the coolant temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, power the vehicle off and allow it to cool. Check the coolant level. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 290). If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

COOLANT VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Explorer Checking the Coolant Level Video Link

For more information scan here:



12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling**.

WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

The performance of large electrical consumers could be reduced or switched off completely.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement by an authorized dealer, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires up to eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge.

During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the vehicle switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

If the 12 volt battery needs servicing, see your authorized dealer.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY - TURKEY



CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.

12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 140).

Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

Yellow Warning Lamp



If it illuminates yellow while driving, it indicates a charge level or power supply error.

Note: *A pop-up message appears on the instrument cluster.*

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Power your vehicle off.
3. Power your vehicle on.

Note: *Wait for the high voltage battery to recharge the 12V battery.*

4. If the charge level of the high voltage battery is insufficient, plug in charge your vehicle.
5. If the message does not disappear after a few minutes, have your vehicle checked.

Red Warning Lamp



If it illuminates red while driving, it indicates an electrical system error.

Note: *A pop-up message appears on the instrument cluster.*

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Power your vehicle off.
3. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
12 V battery not charging. Stop vehicle safely!	Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery related problem. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.
12 V supply is currently restricted. Please drive carefully.	
Please have the 12 V battery checked. Visit workshop.	
Please replace 12 V battery. Visit workshop.	
12 V battery low. Please refer to Owner's Manual.	
Error: 12 V battery. Unable to restart. Please visit workshop.	
Error: 12 V supply. Stop vehicle safely! Owner's Manual!	

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Headlamp Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the aim of the headlamp beam checked by an authorized dealer.

INTERIOR BULBS

INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Bulb	Specification	Power (Watts)
Vanity mirror lamp.	T5.	1.3

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *We recommend cleaning the power sliding rear window at regular intervals to avoid dust and debris accumulation to deliver appropriate function.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40º wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm (12 in) and at a 90º angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa (1,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 23ºC (73ºF).

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.*

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL

WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: *Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

CLEANING FABRIC

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING LEATHER

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING VINYL

WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING SEATBELTS

WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve vehicle components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend disconnecting the 12v battery which will reduce system loads on the HV battery.

Note: *Make sure the vehicle has been switched off and doors closed for at least five minutes before disconnecting the 12 volt battery.*

12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10- minute drive to clean any corrosion from the brakes.
- Check coolant levels to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you removed the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

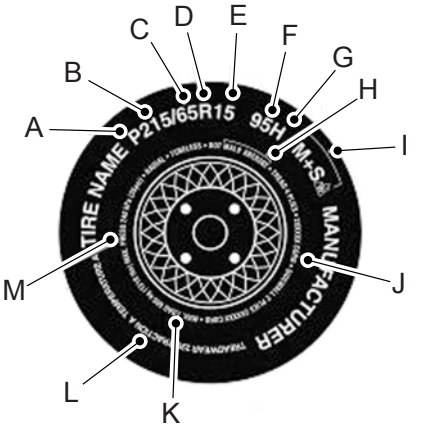
Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures.

INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 130 km/h (81 mph) to 300 km/h (186 mph). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	130 km/h (81 mph)
N	140 km/h (87 mph)
Q	160 km/h (99 mph)
R	170 km/h (106 mph)
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
U	200 km/h (124 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

Note: *For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.*

H. **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A code which identifies manufacturing location and other information about the tire. It may include the letters “DOT” and be referred to as a DOT code. The last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The letters and numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

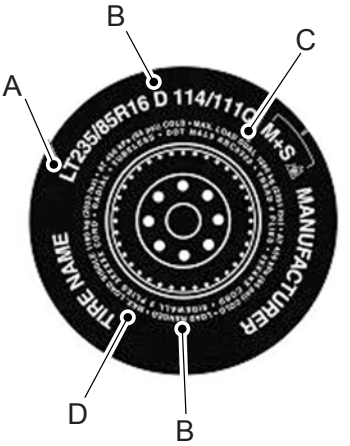
M. **Maximum Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's

recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position). The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

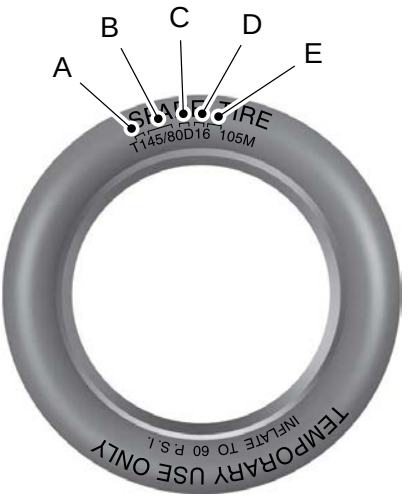
C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

*__Tire label:__ A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

*__Tire Identification Number (TIN):__ A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

*__Inflation pressure:__ A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

*__Standard load:__ A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 2.4 bar (35 psi) and for Metric tires 2.5 bar (36 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

*__Extra load:__ A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 2.9 bar (42 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

*__kPa:__ Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

*__PSI:__ Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

*__Cold tire pressure:__ The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1.6 km (1 mi).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position).

* **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

* **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, as those originally provided for your vehicle. The required tire and wheel sizes, along with the minimum required Load and Speed Index, can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

WARNING: For a mounting pressure more than 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

WARNING: Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

WARNING: When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Age

WARNING: Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.
In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.
You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7ºC (45ºF) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 311).

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.
Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the rear wheels.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 255/50 R 19.

Note: *Maintain correct tire pressures.*

Note: *The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.*

Note: *We recommend that you switch the stability control system off. See* ***Switching Stability Control On and Off*** *(page 187).*

Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 311).

INFLATING THE TIRES

WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

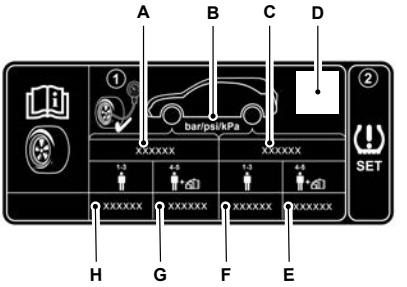
TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS

WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



A Front tire size.
B Measure unit.
C Rear tire size.
D Data matrix including part number.
E Max load tire pressure rear.
F Normal load tire pressure rear.
G Max load tire pressure front.
H Normal load tire pressure front.

Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
235/55 R19 105H XL Summer Tire (Front Axle)[1]	2.6 bar (38 psi)	-	2.6 bar (38 psi)	-
255/50 R19 107H XL Summer Tire (Rear Axle)[1]	-	2.6 bar (38 psi)	-	3 bar (44 psi)
235/55 R19 105H XL All Season (Front Axle)[1]	2.3 bar (33 psi)	-	2.6 bar (38 psi)	-
255/50 R19 107H XL All Season (Rear Axle)[1]	-	2.3 bar (33 psi)	-	3 bar (44 psi)
235/50 R20 104H XL (Front Axle)	2.4 bar (35 psi)	-	2.4 bar (35 psi)	-
255/45 R20 105H XL (Rear Axle)	-	2.1 bar (30 psi)	-	2.8 bar (41 psi)
235/45 R21 101H XL (Front Axle)	2.4 bar (35 psi)	-	2.4 bar (35 psi)	-
255/40 R21 102H XL (Rear Axle)	-	2.3 bar (33 psi)	-	2.8 bar (41 psi)

[1] Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismounted and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.

WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

TIRE ROTATION

WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval helps your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Note: *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

Note: *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

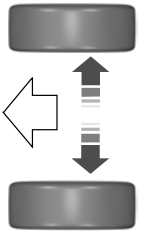
Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

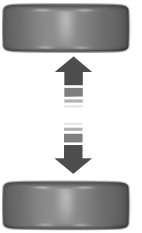
Note: *Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.*

Note: *Directional tires have an arrow on the sidewall to indicate the correct direction of wheel rotation. Do not switch directional tires to the other side of your vehicle.*

Vehicles equipped with different size tires on the front and rear axle

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing





WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

Note: *The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.*

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.

WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

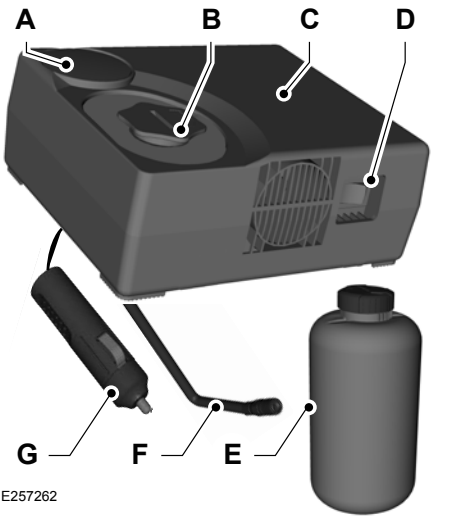
The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The compressor and the bottle are under the hood. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 288).

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS



A	Pressure Gauge.
B	Sealant bottle access cap.
C	Warning label.
D	Power switch.
E	Sealant bottle.

F Tire inflation pipe.

G 12 volt DC power point connector.

Note: *Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.*

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

WARNING: The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.

WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

WARNING: Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

Note: *The recommended tire pressures are on the tire label or safety certification label, located on the B-pillar, inside the driver's door. See* ***Tire Pressure Specifications*** *(page 311).*

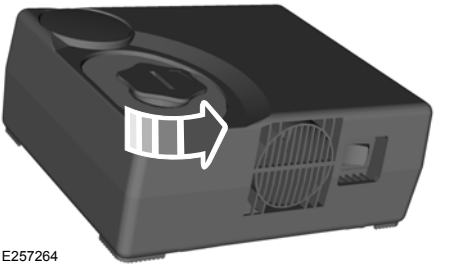
1. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: *Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.*



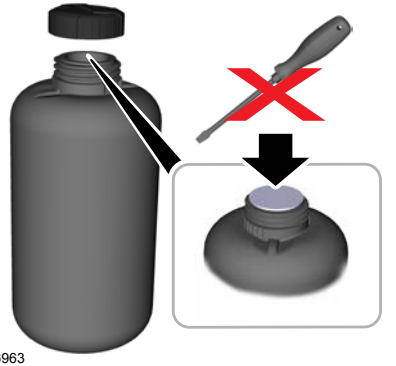
E257263

2. Release the tire inflation pipe and the 12 V DC power point connector from the underside of the compressor.



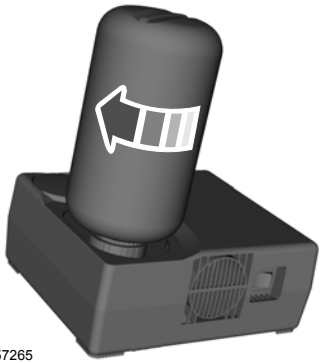
E257264

3. Turn the sealant bottle access cap counterclockwise and remove it.



E256963

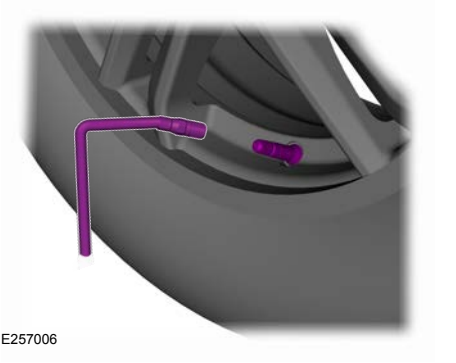
4. Remove the sealant bottle cap. Do not pierce or remove the seal.



E257265

5. Attach the sealant bottle to the compressor. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as sealant could escape.*



E257006

6. Remove the tire valve dust cap and attach the tire inflation pipe.



E257022

7. Plug the 12 V DC power point connector into the 12 V DC socket. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 132).

Note: *Depending on location of the 12 V DC socket, it may be necessary to route the compressor cable trough the passenger compartment to reach the affected tire.*


E257266



8. Start your vehicle and switch the compressor on.
9. Inflate the tire to the recommended tire pressure shown on the Tire Label on the B pillar. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 311). Do not operate the compressor for more than 15 minutes continuously. Switch the compressor and your vehicle off and check the current tire pressure with the pressure gauge.

Note: *If the recommended tire pressure is not reached within 15 minutes, you may disconnect the compressor, slowly roll the vehicle forward by one car length to distribute the sealant within the tire, then restart the inflation process. If the recommended inflation pressure is still not reached, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Stop and call roadside assistance.*

10. Remove the power plug from the 12 V DC power point connector.
11. Unscrew the pipe from the tire valve and put the protective cap back in place. Replace the valve cap on the tire valve.

Note: *Some residual sealant fluid may drip or briefly spray out the pipe while you disconnect it. This is normal.*

12. Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor. This avoids leakage of residual sealant.
13. Remove the warning label showing the maximum permissible speed 80 km/h (50 mph) from the side of the compressor and place it on top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
14. Store the kit, the bottle lid and cap safely in your vehicle. You need the kit again when you check the tire pressure after driving the vehicle a short distance.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



E257942

15. Promptly drive the vehicle cautiously for 6 km (4 mi) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph)

Note: *If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, do not proceed to the second stage of this operation. Reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance.*

16. After 6 km (4 mi) stop at a safe place and check the tire pressure using the kit. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 311).
17. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve and firmly screw the air compressor pipe onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
18. With the compressor off, the gauge of the kit displays the tire inflation pressure.

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped to 2 bar (29.0 psi) below the recommended tire pressure, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Stop and call roadside assistance. Do not drive your vehicle.*



19. If necessary, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tire pressure with the compressor turned off to get an accurate pressure reading. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 311).
20. Unscrew the compressor pipe from the valve stem and reinstall the valve cap. Leave the sealant bottle attached to the compressor. Safely store the tire sealant and inflator kit in your vehicle.

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WARNING: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

The kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair or replacement after using the kit could differ from country to country. We recommend you consult a tire specialist.

After using the kit:

- Do not drive your vehicle more than 200 km (120 mi) before repairing or replacing the punctured tire.
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that a tire was sealed using the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.
- Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 311). Before the tire is removed from the rim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.
- Take the kit to an authorized dealer to have the sealant bottle and the tire inflation pipe replaced.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire monitoring system warns the driver when the tire pressures are too low, or if there is a system malfunction. The tire monitoring system uses indirect measurement. It monitors all four tires for tire pressure loss while driving. It uses data from the ABS sensors and various parameters to check the speed of rotation and the rolling circumference of the individual wheels.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

WARNING: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

Note: *Note: If you adjust the pressure of all four tires to the recommended cold pressure located on the Tire Label on the driver B-pillar, you need to re-synchronize the tire monitoring system also.*

Note: *The tire monitoring system may only be re-synchronized if all the tires have been adjusted to the correct tire pressure.*

Note: *Only use recommended tires and wheels. Use of any other tire or wheel could affect the operation of the tire pressure monitoring system.*

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The tire pressure loss indicator may react with a delay, illuminate or does not display anything at all:

- In the event of a sporty driving style.
- When you drive on snow-covered or icy roads or unpaved roads.
- When you drive with snow chains.
- When new tires are driven at high speeds for the first time, they can expand slightly and trigger a one-off pressure warning.
- The Tire Pressure Loss Indicator does not work if there is a fault in the ESC or ABS.
- The tire monitoring system cannot function correctly unless all cold tires have the correct tire pressure.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

- If the pressure in all tires is not appropriate to the vehicle load.
- When you use a spare wheel.

Inflate the tires, if needed, to the recommended pressures and carry out the reset procedure.

Note: *Driving on unpaved roads for long periods or a sporty driving style can temporarily deactivate the Tire Pressure Loss Indicator. In the event of a malfunction, the indicator lamp flashes for about 1 minute and then lights up continuously. However, the indicator lamp goes out when the road conditions or driving style change.*

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure. This adjusts the reference pressure to the current tire pressure.

Note: *If you adjust the pressure of all four tires to the recommended cold pressure located on the Tire Label on the driver B pillar, you need to reset the tire monitoring system.*

Note: *To measure the cold tire pressure, the vehicle must have been stationary for 3 hours or driven only a few kilometers at a slow speed during this time.*

The tire pressure loss indicator may only be reset if all four tires have been filled at the correct tire pressure when measured on a cold tire.

After a warning about the tire pressure being too low, switch your vehicle off and then back on again. This is necessary before you can adapt the tire pressure loss indicator again.

1. Power your vehicle on.
2. Switch the center display on if necessary.
3.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
4.  Press this icon.
5. Press ***Exterior***.
6. Press ***Tyres***.
7.  Press the button.
8. When all four tires are adjusted to the recommended tire pressures values, press **OK**.
9. After an extended driving time (at least 20 minutes) with driving at different speeds, the system automatically learns the new values and monitor them.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 311). Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
The warning lamp flashes for about a minute and then remains yellow continuously	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	There is a system fault. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch your vehicle off and then back on again. Carry out the system reset procedure. See **Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 322). If the fault persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Loss of pressure detected.	Inflate the tires to the recommended tire pressure. Check the tires for damage and repair them if necessary. Carry out the system reset procedure.
Error: Tyre Pressure Monitor	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed, firmly hold the steering wheel and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Your vehicle does not include a spare wheel and tire, or a vehicle jack, it has a Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.

Note: *Only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, use the tire sealant and inflator kit included with your vehicle.*

Have the flat serviced by as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tire. See **What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 321).

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, recheck the pressures and restore the value in the Tire Pressure Monitoring System. See* ***Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System*** *(page 322).*

Jacking Positions

WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, apply the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

WARNING: Using the high voltage battery box as a jacking point could result in electric shock, personal injury, fire or death.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

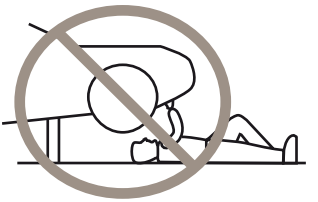
WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel hub and the wheel bolts. This can cause the wheel bolts to loosen while driving.

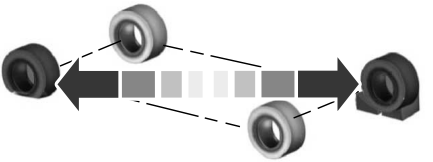
WARNING: It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

WARNING: Apply the parking brake, switch the vehicle off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

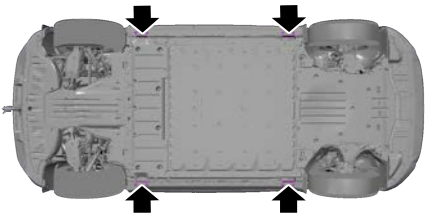
Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing



1. Park on a firm and level surface and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Apply the parking brake. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 179).
3. Power off the vehicle.



4. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.



5. Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Note: *Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.*

Note: *Do not lift the vehicle on the strike strip or beyond the strike strips. These are the lowest point beyond the vehicle sills.*

WHEEL BOLTS

WARNING: Only use the specific wheel bolts and wheels provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.

WARNING: When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel bolts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt Size	Nm (lb.ft) [1]
M14 x 1.5	120 Nm (89 lb.ft)

[1] Torque specifications are for bolts and hub threads free of dirt and rust. Use only our recommended replacement fasteners.

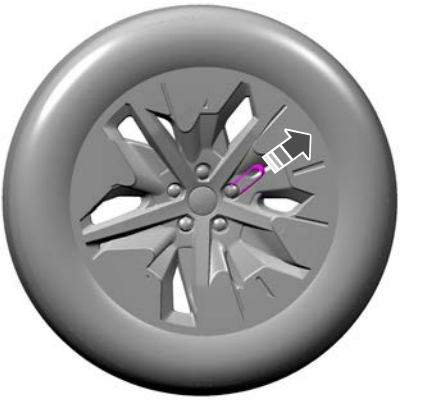
Retighten the wheel bolts to the specified torque within 160 km (100 mi) after any wheel disturbance, such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel bolt key and replacement locking wheel bolts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.



A Wheel pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.



To remove the bolt caps, slide the remover onto the bolt cap. Make sure it clips on both sides of the bolt cap. Pull the remover tool outward.

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
Overall length.	4,468 (175.9)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	1,871 (73.7)
Overall height excluding the antenna.	1,604–1,614 (63.1–63.5)
Wheelbase.	2,767 (108.9)
Front track.	1,584–1,596 (62.4–62.8)
Rear track.	1,565–1,579 (61.6–62.2)

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill the coolant to the maximum mark on the coolant reservoir.

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze/Coolant HT-FVA MU7J 19544 BA	-

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash - Winter Premium 55 PU7J-19C544-**	WSS-M8B18-A2

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Materials

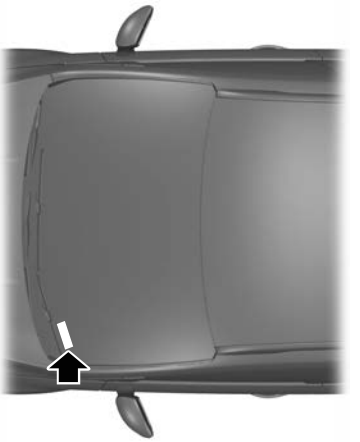
Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance RU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Note: *We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

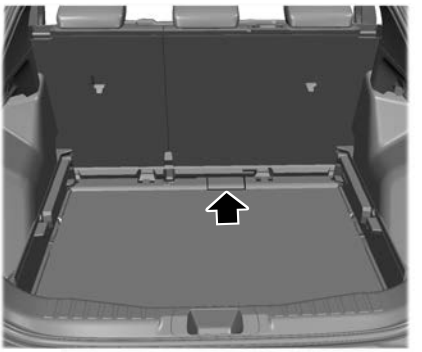
LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

You can find the vehicle identification number at the following locations.



E163915

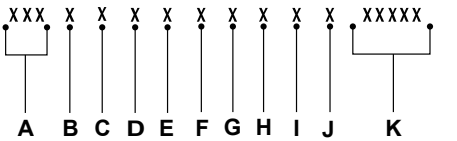
On the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



Stamped into the floor panel in the luggage compartment, under the loadspace floor, behind the rear seats.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER OVERVIEW

The vehicle identification number contains the following information:



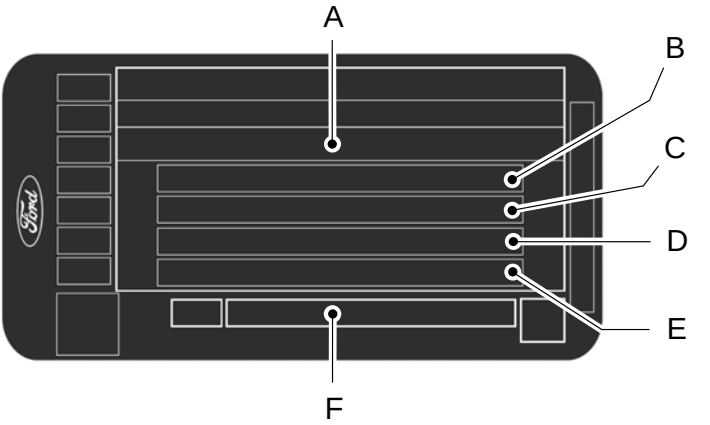
A	World manufacturer identifier.
B	Body type.
C	Model line.
D	Alternative drive concept.
E	Product source.
F	Assembly plant.
G	VIN check digit.
H	Model year.
I	Year of manufacture.
J	Month of manufacture.
K	Vehicle sequence number.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



A Vehicle identification number.
B Gross vehicle weight.
C Gross train weight.
D Maximum front axle weight.
E Maximum rear axle weight.
F Model/variant/version.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Privacy settings***.
5. Switch ***Vehicle Connectivity & Share Data*** on or off.

CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

You can adjust the settings on the touchscreen.

1.  Press this icon.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon at the bottom of the screen.
4. Press ***Wi-Fi***.
5. Press ***Wi-Fi Networks:***.
6. Switch ***Search for Wi-Fi*** on.
7. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: *Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.*

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is my Ford mobile app not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

You can also control the this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

IDENTIFYING THE AUDIO UNIT



SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF

Press and hold the button on the instrument panel for a few seconds to switch the display on or off.

Press the button on the instrument panel to mute or unmute the audio.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Press this icon.
2. Press this icon.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Selecting the Radio



Press the button to select radio mode and display the list of available radio stations.

Selecting Media



Press the button to select media mode and display the available media sources.

Player



Select the player to display the currently used source and related options.

When a radio station is on, you can select the following options:

- Mute.
- Seek station.

When media mode is on, you can select the following options:

- Adding favorites.
- Moving between the tracks.
- Play/pause.
- Repeat.
- Shuffle.

PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE



Press to start or resume playback.



Press to pause playback.

Note: *Not all sources can be paused. Mute function is available for sources that cannot be paused.*

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME

You can adjust the volume with volume buttons on the steering wheel.



Press to increase volume.



Press to decrease volume.

You can also adjust the audio system volume with the touch slider on the instrument panel.

SWITCHING SHUFFLE MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

Note: *Not all sources have shuffle mode.*

SWITCHING REPEAT MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch repeat mode on or off.

Note: *Not all sources have repeat mode.*

ADDING FAVORITES

Adding radio station to favorites

1. Select a radio station.
2.  Press the favorites button.
3.  Press the add favorites button.

4.  Press this button to edit favorites.

Note: *You can add six stations to your favorite list.*

Adding media to favorites

1. Select a media file.
2.  Press the favorites button.
3.  Press the add favorites button.
4. Select tracks, albums, artists or genres.

Note: *Some options may not be available in certain media files.*

5.  Press this button to edit favorites.

Note: *You can add six media objects to your favorite list.*

MUTING THE AUDIO

 Press to mute the audio. Press again to unmute the audio.

 When displayed press to mute the audio.

 When displayed press to unmute the audio.

SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Press the clock on the touchscreen.
2. Set the clock time to manual.
3. Select the time zone.
4. Select the time format.

Note: *The AM and PM options are not available if 24-hour mode is on.*

5. Set the time.

Setting The Date

1. Press the clock on the touchscreen.
2. Set the clock time to manual.
3. Set the date.
4. Select the date format.

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press the clock on the touchscreen.
2. Set the clock time to manual.
3. Switch Auto Time Update on or off.
4. Select the time format.
5. Select the date format.

FM RADIO

FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN FM RADIO STATION


Press to switch to the next radio station.


Press to switch to the previous radio station.

Selecting a Station from the List

1. Press the audio panel on the touchscreen.
2. 
Press to select radio mode and to display the available radio stations.
3. Select the desired station.

SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF


Press and hold the button on the instrument panel for a few seconds to switch the display on or off.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION


Press to switch to the next radio station.


Press to switch to the previous radio station.

Selecting a Station from the List

1. Press the audio panel on the touchscreen.
2. 
Press to select radio mode and to display the available radio stations.
3. Select the desired station.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

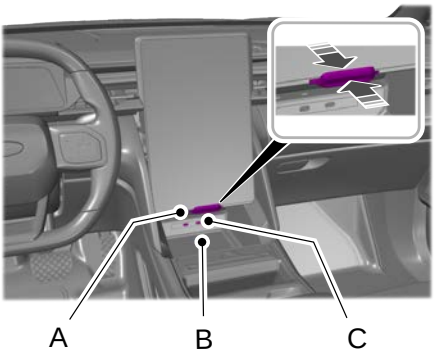
USING THE MOVABLE SCREEN

WARNING: Adjusting the screen while driving may cause the driver to become distracted. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

WARNING: When sliding the screen up or down, take care not to get your fingers or hands caught in the mechanism. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not place a valid key in the storage area.

Adjusting the Screen



A Handle
B Storage area
C USB ports

1. Hold the handle from both sides with your fingers, and wait one second for the screen to unlock.

Note: *There is an audible click when the lock disengages.*

2. Move the screen up or down to the desired angle and release the handle. The screen locks into position.

Note: *The screen stays in this position until you adjust it again.*

Note: *Do not place any objects on top of the screen or block its movement.*

MOVABLE SCREEN VIDEOS

Animations are shown to enhance the written content and not intended to replace it. We recommend that you read the Owner's Manual for full details.

Explorer Using the Movable Screen Video Link

For more information scan here:

CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 5 km/h (3 mph).

STATUS BAR

The status bar is in the top right-hand corner of the display. The following icons may appear on the status bar.

Mobile Apps



Press to return to Android Auto.



Press to return to Apple CarPlay.

Notification Center



Press to view notifications.

Privacy



Vehicle data unavailable or disabled.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Vehicle Signal



Network signal strength.



Network signal roaming.

Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

HOME SCREEN

Applications, such as navigation, audio and phone are located in the main portion of the display.



Press the icon to access the home screen.

Note: *You can customize which applications display on the main screen.*

Press any of the tiles to access that feature. Swipe to see more application tiles.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Adjusting the Home Screen

1. Press and hold any tile on the home screen until the adjustment screen opens.
2. Press a tile to select for change.
3. Press an application from the list to replace the selected tile.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to adjust the home screen.

Creating a new page

1. Press and hold any tile on the home screen until the adjustment screen opens.
2.  Press this icon to create a new page.
3. Follow the prompts on the screen to adjust the home screen.

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

If the center display system freezes, the system automatically restarts. If the restart does not resolve the issue, you may manually restart the center display.

 Press and hold the button for 20 seconds on the center console to reboot the center display.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

This feature works best if you connect your vehicle to your FordPass account and turn on all privacy settings. See **Connecting FordPass to the Modem** (page 333).

Switching Voice Interaction On and Off

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Privacy settings***.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to set your preferred settings.

 Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press ***Activation***.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to set your preferred settings.

 Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word followed by your command.

 You can also press the button on the steering wheel to begin a voice interaction.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

CANCELING A VOICE INTERACTION

 Press the button on the steering wheel twice within two seconds to cancel a voice interaction.

The voice interaction automatically turns off if:

- You press the touchscreen.
- You activate the parking system.
- You receive a phone call.
- A navigation system audible warning sounds.

VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press ***Tips***.
4. Press a menu option on the list for the relevant examples.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

VOICE INTERACTION SETTINGS

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to set your preferred settings.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

PHONE PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure ***Bluetooth®*** is enabled on your device.
2.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
3.  Press this icon.
4.  Press this icon.
5. Press ***Select mobile telephone***.
6. Select your device.

Note: *A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.*

7. Confirm the number on the cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.
8. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: *If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the touchscreen to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting any time.*

PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the All button to alphabetically sort all of your contacts. Use the Favourites button to display the list of your favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

Calls

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Dial

Directly dial a number.

Messages

Display the list of emails, text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

Note: *Press the top left-hand dropdown menu to select your preferred setting.*

Voice control

Press and hold the button, and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected device to access supported features.

Note: *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL



You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Details
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Details
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Details
Calls	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Details
Dial	Select the digits of the number you want to call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.



Press this icon to delete all the digits you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears on the display if it is available.



Press this icon to accept the call.



Press this icon to mute the ringtone.



Press this icon and follow the prompts to reject the call.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the name of the contacts or phone number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:



Press this icon to access the phone keypad.



You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.



Press this icon to hold the current call.



Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing


Access your contacts during the current call.


Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select ***Bluetooth®***.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select ***Bluetooth®***.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF


You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: *Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.*

Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to ***Bluetooth®***.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off

1. 
Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2. 
Press this icon.
3. 
Press this icon.
4. Press ***Select mobile telephone***.
5. Swipe left on your device.
6. 
Press this icon to switch Apple CarPlay on or off.


You may also press this icon to switch to handsfree mode.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO™ ON AND OFF


You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.*

Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to ***Bluetooth®***.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: *Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.*

Switching Android Auto On and Off

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Select mobile telephone***.
5. Swipe left on your device.
6.  Press this icon to switch Android Auto on or off.

 You may also press this icon to switch to handsfree mode.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure ***Bluetooth®*** is enabled on your device.
2.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
3.  Press this icon.
4.  Press this icon.
5. Press ***Select mobile telephone***.
6. Select your device.

Note: *A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.*

7. Confirm the number on the cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

The ***Bluetooth®*** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by ***Bluetooth SIG, Inc.*** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device.
2.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Media***.
5. Select a Bluetooth device as a media source from the right-hand dropdown menu.

 Press to start or resume playback.

 Press to pause playback.

 Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.

 Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

HOW DO PERSONAL PROFILES WORK

AUTHORIZED USER

You can set only one authorized user to your vehicle. The authorized user has access to the vehicle and vehicle services, and is able to save personalized settings in the personal profile. The authorized user can also manage vehicle services.

Note: *The authorized user can give multiple users access to the vehicle in the FordPass app.*

GUEST USER

The guest user has access to the vehicle and limited access to vehicle services, and cannot save personalized settings in the personal profile.

Note: *The guest user cannot manage vehicle services.*

SELECTING A PERSONAL PROFILE

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to select a user.

DELETING A PERSONAL PROFILE

Note: *Deleting an authorized user restores your vehicle to factory settings.*

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press ***Factory reset***.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CONNECTED NAVIGATION

Connected navigation provides enhanced functionality with up-to-date traffic information and content.

This feature works best if you connect your vehicle to your FordPass account and turn on all privacy settings. See **Connecting FordPass to the Modem** (page 333).

Switching Connected Navigation On and Off

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Privacy settings***.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to set your preferred settings.

 Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.

Note: *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations, road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

Map data about the area you frequently travel in updates in the background while your vehicle is switched on, is connected, and vehicle data sharing is turned on.

You can download other region map data to a USB data storage from the local Ford website. Insert the USB data storage into a USB port in your vehicle to manually update the vehicle's map data. Leave the USB data storage plugged into your vehicle for several days to complete the update.

Note: *The status of the update process does not display.*

Note: *You can check the map data version in* ***System information*** *anytime.*

Note: *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.*

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and move them apart to zoom in. (You may also press the map twice within a few seconds to zoom in the map.) Place two fingers on the touchscreen and bring them together to zoom out.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the left-hand side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

Note: *Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.*

Note: *We recommend using 3D format as it provides the best navigation experience.*


You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. 
Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2. 
Press this icon.
3. 
Press this icon.
4. Press the search bar at the top left-hand side of the screen.
5. Enter your destination by using the keyboard.
6. Select a destination from the list.

Note: *Information about the location appears on the screen.*

7. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.


You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1. 
Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2. 
Press this icon.
3. 
Press this icon.
4. Press on the map to place a pin at a location.

Note: *Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.*

5. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.


You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

1. 
Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2. 
Press this icon.
3. 
Press this icon.
4. Press ***Suggested*** on the top of the screen.
5. Press a predicted destination tile.

Note: *The predicted destination tiles appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.*

6. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Last dests*** on the top of the screen.
5. Press on a location from the list.

Note: *Information about the location appears on the screen.*

6. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press ***Favourites*** on the top of the screen.
5. Press on a location from the list.

Note: *Information about the location appears on the screen.*

6. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

 You may also press this icon when viewing location details to save the location as favorite.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Press on a point of interest icon on the map.

Note: *Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.*

5. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT

1. Add an additional destination when driving to a set destination.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Note: *You may add additional destinations using the text entry screen, the map screen, a predictive, a recent or a saved destination.*

Note: *Information about the location of the stopover appears on the screen.*

2.  Press this icon.
3. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the route plan on the right-hand side of the screen.

Note: *When opening the route plan, stopover suggestions may also appears on the screen.*

Note: *Press a stopover tile for more information.*

2. Press and hold a stopover tile, and move it to the desired position on the list.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon.
4. Switch ***Navigation announcements*** on.
5. Open the ***Navigation announcements*** submenu to set your preferred settings.

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3.  Press this icon
4. Press ***Repeat navigation announcement***.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE

 Press this icon.

Note: *Follow the prompts on the screen if you have stopovers added.*

 You can also control this vehicle feature with voice interaction. See **Voice Interaction Examples** (page 343).

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Software updates introduce new features and provide updates to the vehicle's software systems.

Software Download

Downloads automatically occur in the background when your vehicle is running and require no input from you. A notification appears on the touchscreen when the download is completed and a software update is available.

Note: *Updates could take longer depending on the network connection or could not download at all if the network connection is lost. See* ***Connected Vehicle*** *(page 333). See* ***Connected Vehicle Data*** *(page 19).*

Software Installation

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The parking brake is not applied.
- Your vehicle is unlocked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors, windows, hood, and trunk are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- An active vehicle key is detected inside the vehicle.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Any occupants or animals are detected inside of the vehicle.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

When you begin a software update installation, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Switch on your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
- Use the vehicle functions and displays during this time.

Note: *The anti-theft alarm system and the double locking feature deactivate when you begin software update installation, and remain disabled after the installation completed.*

Switch off your vehicle and follow the prompts on the touchscreen to start the software installation process.

Note: *Most software update installations complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours. We recommend to start the installation process when you normally do not use your vehicle, such as overnight.*

If a software update installation is not successful, follow the prompt on the touchscreen or on the instrument cluster. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible if any of the following occur:

- The control units do not function properly after a software update.
- The instrument cluster does not display. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 102).
- The software installation process repeatedly fails.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

Performing a system reset allows you to remove all personal information and restore settings to their factory defaults.

1.  Press this icon on the touchscreen.
2.  Press this icon.
3. Press ***Factory reset***.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to complete the reset.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

AUTHORIZED DEALER DIRECTORY

Name	Telephone	Address	City
GİZERLER	(322) 346 80 80	Levent Mah. Eski Ceyhan Yolu Üzeri 5. Km No: 210 Yüreğir/Adana	Adana
OTOKOÇ ADANA	(322) 441 17 17	Mersin Yolu Üzeri 9. Km Sarı Hamzalı Köyü Mevkii Merkez/Adana	Adana
İNTERTEKS	(416) 227 24 01	Adıyaman Gölbaşı Karayolu Üzeri Küçük Sanayi Sitesi Karşısı Merkez/Adıyaman	Adıyaman
GLS GELİŞİM OTOMOTİV	(382) 245 44 14	Bahçesaray Mahallesi 135. Cadde No: 216 Aksaray	Aksaray
BAŞER	(312) 269 80 00	Ayaş Yolu Çatalkara Sokak No:199 Sincan/Ankara	Ankara
KARTAŞ	(312) 583 85 60	Tevfik İleri Mh. Özal Bulvarı No: 55 Pursaklar/Ankara	Ankara
OTOKOÇ ANKARA	(312) 207 47 00	Eskişehir Yolu 12. Km No:350 Ümitköy/Ankara	Ankara
TAN OTO	(312) 591 34 34	Fatih Sultan Mehmet Bulvarı No:252 Macunköy,Yenimahalle/Ankara	Ankara
BİLALLER	(242) 259 33 70	Sarısu Mah. 121. Sk. No:30/A-B Konyaaltı/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ALANYA	(242) 515 13 80	Çevreyolu Üzeri No: 1 Tosmur Beldesi Alanya/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ANTALYA	(242) 340 26 85	Altınova Sinan Mah. Havaalanı Yolu Üzeri Merkez/Antalya	Antalya
KAHYAOĞULLARI	(256) 633 10 01	Söke Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Kuşadası/Aydın	Aydın
ZAFER	(256) 219 40 00	Aydın-İzmir Karayolu 1.Km (Aymas Bitişiği) Merkez/Aydın	Aydın
AKOTO EDREMİT	(266) 374 06 65	İzmir Yolu Üzeri 2. Km. Ilıcalar Mevkii Edremit/Balıkesir	Balıkesir

Name	Telephone	Address	City
AKOTO Merkez	(266) 283 00 10	İzmir Yolu 8. Km Osb Kavşağı Merkez/Balıkesir	Balıkesir
MUSLUBAŞLAR	(266) 721 21 21	600 Evler Mah. Ataturk Cad. No: 95 Bandırma/Balıkesir	Balıkesir
OĞUZCAN	(488) 218 02 23	Gültepe Mahallesi Demokrasi Bulvarı No: 401 Merkez/ Batman	Batman
OTOKOÇ BURSA	(224) 270 39 00	29 Ekim Mah. İzmir Yolu Cad. No: 380/A Nilüfer/Bursa	Bursa
SÖNMEZ KOÇ	(224) 261 22 44	Yeni Yalova Yolu 9. Km Sönmez Asf. Karşısı Merkez/ Bursa	Bursa
ARSLANLAR	(286) 263 06 25	İzmir Yolu 5. Km Merkez/ Çanakkale	Çanakkale
EVLÜCE OTO	(364) 235 02 12	Ankara Asfaltı 7. Km Merkez/ Çorum	Çorum
YARGÜL	(258) 371 23 79	Akçeşme Mevkii Menderes Bulvarı No: 161 Gümüşler/ Denizli	Denizli
DİYARBAKIR OTO	(412) 255 04 45	Şanlıurfa Yolu Üzeri 4 Km Merkez/Diyarbakır	Diyarbakır
GÖRÜR	(380) 537 53 15	Taşköprü Köyü E-5 Mahallesi No: 55 Düzce	Düzce
TUZCULAR	(284) 763 11 23	Ford Plaza İstanbul Yolu 7. Km Merkez/Edirne	Edirne
ÇETİNKAYALAR	(424) 247 40 31	Malatya Yolu 8. Km Baskil Yol Kavşağı Merkez/Elazığ	Elazığ
CİNDİLLİ OTOMOTİV	(442) 242 00 13	Tortum Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Cindilli Ford Plaza Erzurum	Erzurum
OTOKOÇ ESKİŞEHİR	(222) 335 10 10	Şirintepe Mh. İsmet İnönü 2. Cad. No: 64 Tepebaşı Merkez/ Eskişehir	Eskişehir
DOĞANLAR	(342) 323 23 13	Mücahitler Mahallesi Sani Konukoğlu Bulvarı No:28/A Şehitkamil/Gaziantep	Gaziantep

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OVALI ANTAKYA	(326) 221 61 65	İskenderun Yolu Üzeri 5. Km Antakya/Hatay	Hatay
OVALI İSKEN-DERUN	(326) 618 38 38	İsmet İnönü Mah.İbrahim Karaoğlanoğlu Cad.No: 38 Hatay/İskenderun	Hatay
SÜRKİT OTOM.	(476) 210 11 38	Söğütlü Mevkii Çevre Yolu Üzeri Ford Plaza Merkez/Iğdır	Iğdır
GÜRSOY	(232) 464 02 50	Merkez Mah. Gazi Mustafa Kemal Bulvari Blv. Gürsoy Oto. Gürsoy No: 872 Mezitli/Mersin	İçel
ASF	(216) 427 37 47	Soğanlik Yeni Mah. Soğanlik D-100 Kuzey Yanyol Cad. 30 B/Kartal/İstanbul	İstanbul
ATILGAN SANC-AKTEPE	(216) 498 98 00	Veysel Karani Mahallesi, Aşık Reyhani Caddesi No: 14 Sanc-aktepe/İstanbul	İstanbul
AYDOĞANLAR	(212) 665 84 84	Yenibosna Merkez Mah. Kavak Sokak Ser Plaza No: 3/1-2, Bodrum Kat Bahçelievler/ İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ B.ÇEKMECE	(212) 863 84 10	Mimarsinan Merkez Mah.E-5 Londra Asfaltı No: 57 B. Çekmece İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ MAHMUTBEY	(212) 454 40 00	Göztepe Mah. Rahim Sok. No: 2-4 Bağcılar/İstanbul	İstanbul
GÜRBAŞLAR	(216) 465 33 61	Göztepe Mah. Atatürk Cad. No: 12 Migros karşısı A.Hisarı/ İstanbul	İstanbul
KAR OTOMOTİV	(212) 612 49 49	Defterdar Mah. Fethi Çelebi Cad. No: 23/1 Eyüp/İstanbul	İstanbul
KELEŞLER	(212) 417 39 15	Uluyol Cad. No: 25/A Bayrampaşa/İstanbul	İstanbul
KENT OTOMOTİV	(212) 423 53 00	Saadetdere Mah. 68. Sok. No: 40 Esenyurt/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL İSTİNYE	(212) 229 95 55	İstinye Mah. Sarıyer Cad. No: 70/C Yeniköy/İstanbul	İstanbul

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL ATAŞEHİR	(216) 574 38 32	Kayışdağı Cd. No: 3 Flora Plaza Küçükbakkalköy, Ataşehir/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL TAŞDELEN	(216) 430 12 00	Çamlık Mah. Çobandere Mevkii Sırrı Çelik Bulvarı No: 9A/9B, Şile Otobanı 11. Km Taşdelen, Çekmeköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
TEPRETOĞULLARI	(216) 545 03 33	Acıbadem Mah Köftüncü Sokak No: 1/3 Kadıköy/ İstanbul	İstanbul
ARKAS İZMİR	(232) 399 34 34	Anadolu Cad. No: 687/C Karsıyaka/Izmır Karşıyaka/ İzmir	İzmir
ÇETAŞ İZMİR	(232) 478 07 07	Ankara Cad. Naldöken Mah. No: 319 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
İZKAR	(232) 254 38 00	Akçay Cad. No: 49 Gaziemir/ İzmir	İzmir
OTOKOÇ İZMİR	(232) 498 90 00	Kazım Dirik Mah. 296. Sokak No: 1 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
METİNLER	(352) 224 54 54	Konaklar Mevkii Sivas Cad. No: 244 Kayseri	Kayseri
ÜNAL	(352) 311 55 00	Anbar Mahallesi Osman Kavuncu Bulvarı No: 498 Anbar, Melikgazi/Kayseri	Kayseri
ÇANGAR	(392) 227 05 55	Soyak Evleri Mevkii, Küçükkaymaklı Mah. Şehit Mustafa Ruso Cad. Lefkoşe/ Kıbrıs	Kıbrıs
ACAMAR	(262) 606 10 10	Köşklü Çeşme Mah. İstanbul Cad. No:87 41400 Gebze/ Kocaeli	Kocaeli
ESOTO	(262) 335 43 15	Sanayi Mah. D-130 Yanyol Cad. No: 79 Merkez/Kocaeli	Kocaeli
OTOKOÇ KONYA	(332) 255 42 33	İstanbul Yolu Üzeri Sancak Mah. Büyükırmak Sk. No:1 Selçuklu Merkez/Konya	Konya

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ILICAK	(422) 444 59 55	1.OSB Mahallesi Havaalanı Yolu 2.Cadde No: 14/1 Yeşilyurt/MALATYA	Malatya
ÇETAŞ MANİSA	(236) 233 84 00	Güzelyurt Mah. Menemen Cad. No:15/A Manisa	Manisa
ÇETAŞ SALİHLİ	(236) 716 16 00	Ankara Asfaltı 3. km. Salihli/ Manisa	Manisa
NAS OTO	(482) 312 04 44	Havaalanı Yanı 47100 Merkez/ Mardin	Mardin
HELVACIOĞLU BODRUM	(252) 358 68 38	Açık Kırlar Mevkii Atatürk Bulvarı No: 289 Konacık, Bodrum/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU FETHİYE	(252) 646 57 77	Karaçulha Belediyesi Cumhuriyet Cad. No: 199 Fethiye/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU Merkez	(252) 212 80 00	Orhaniye Mah. Uğur Mumcu Bulvarı No: 17 Merkez/Muğla	Muğla
ALTAŞ	(452) 234 19 20	Cumhuriyet Mah. Mustafa Kemal Bulvarı No: 102 Merkez/ Ordu	Ordu
ATILGAN RİZE	(464) 226 01 85	Cumhuriyet Çay Fabrikası Karşısı Gündoğdu Rize	Rize
AKGÜN	(264) 276 72 10	Hanlıköy Mahallesi Eskişehir Caddesi No: 93/A Arifiye/ Sakarya	Sakarya
OTOKOÇ SAMSUN	(362) 266 61 12	Samsun-Trabzon Karayolu 10. Km Kutlukent Tekkeköy/ Samsun	Samsun
KURT	(346) 502 58 58	Yeşilyurt Mah. Sultanşehir Blv. 146 Merkez/Sivas	Sivas
ŞANLIURFA OTO	(414) 316 62 27	Mardin Yolu 3.Km Jandarma Karşısı Merkez/Şanlıurfa	Şanlıurfa
DÖNÜŞÜM	(486) 616 76 16	Nusaybin Yolu Üzeri Cizre Çıkışı 8. Km Habur Tesisleri Yanı Nerme Mevkii Çavuşlu Köyü, Cizre/Şırnak	Şırnak

Name	Telephone	Address	City
VOLKAN Çorlu	(282) 685 42 90	E-5 Karayolu Üzeri Önerler Mevkii Mücavir Mah. İstanbul Cad. 43/A, Çorlu/Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
VOLKAN Tekirdağ	(282) 293 38 82	Hürriyet Mah. Sami Efendi Sok. No:2 Süleymanpaşa/ Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
ORUÇLAR	(356) 214 41 43	Yeniyurt Mah. Vali Zekai Gümüşdiş Blv. No: 55/A Tokat	Tokat
TUNALAR	(462) 248 12 00	Tunalar Ford Plaza Yıldızlı/ Trabzon	Trabzon
AKKÖPRÜLÜ	(434) 217 17 17	Şabaniye Mah. İpekyolu 4. Km Merkez/Van	Van
ERDEĞER	(226) 351 73 50	Kılıç Köyü Şakşak Mevkii Çiftlikköy/Yalova	Yalova
AZİM OTO	(372) 323 98 40	Muammer Aksoy Cad. No: 38 Karadeniz Ereğli/Zonguldak	Zonguldak

SERVICE INTERVALS

Model	Service Interval (Whichever Occurs First)	
• All passenger cars. • Ranger • Tourneo Connect. • Tourneo Courier. • Transit Connect. • Transit Courier.	1 year	15,000 km (9,500 mi)
• Tourneo Custom. • Transit. • Transit Custom.	1 year	20,000 km (12,500 mi)

Note: *Service intervals may vary depending on engine options. For information about the service interval details of your vehicle, please refer to the local Ford website.*

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ROLLOVER WARNING

WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit *http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html*.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit *www.wirelessconformity.ford.com*.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of ***REACH***, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

To find out more about the ***REACH*** directive, search ***REACH*** on the local Ford website.

Note: *To find the local Ford website, visit https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html.*

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

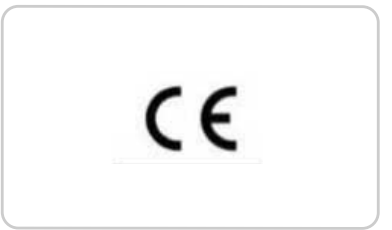
ANTENNAS

European Union EU



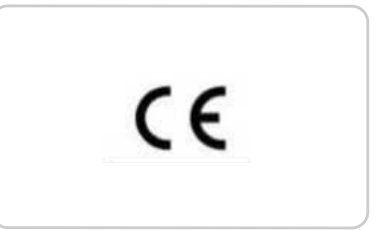
BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Europe Union EU



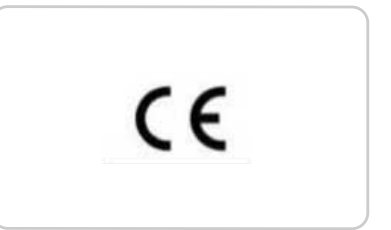
BODY CONTROL MODULE

Europe Union EU



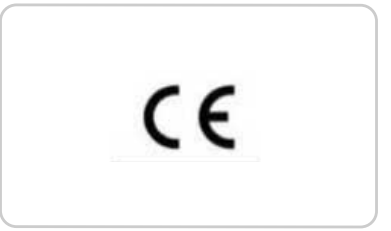
CRUISE CONTROL MODULE

European Union (EU)



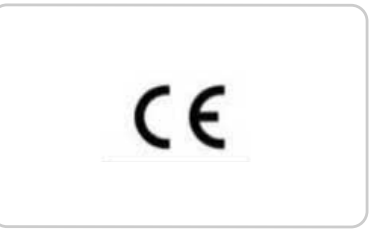
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

European Union EU



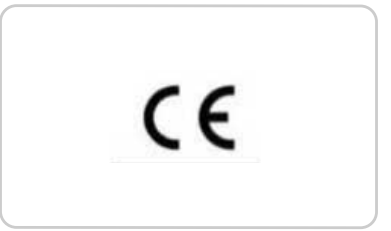
OPERATING SYSTEM

European Union EU



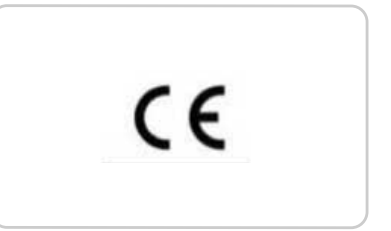
KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

European Union EU



RADIO TRANSCEIVER MODULE

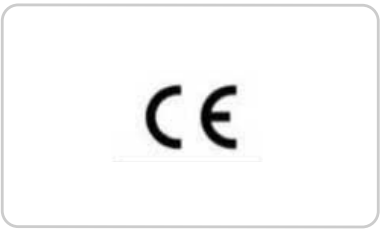
European Union EU



Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

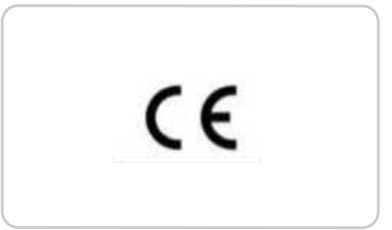
TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

Europe Union EU



WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE

European Union EU



REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

ECALL USER INFORMATION

eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What Is eCall** (page 44).

1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.

1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 44).

1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 45).

2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).

2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.

2.3. Types of data and its recipients.

2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
- Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
- Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
- Any additional data (if applicable): See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 20).

2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.
Additional information (if available): -

2.4. Arrangements for data processing.

2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.

2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.

2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.
Additional remarks (if any): -

2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.

2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.

(1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).

(2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).

(3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)

3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the FordPass app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.

3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.

3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.

3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).

3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.

3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.

3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the FordPass app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

1

12V Battery....293
12V Battery Precautions....293
Battery Management System Limitations....294
Changing the 12V Battery....294
Charging the 12V Battery....294
How Does the Battery Management System Work....293
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V Battery....294
What Is the Battery Management System....293
12V Battery – Troubleshooting....295
12V Battery – Information Messages....296
12V Battery – Warning Lamps....295

3

360 Degree Camera....198
360 Degree Camera Settings....199
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines....198
360 Degree Camera Limitations....198
360 Degree Camera Precautions....198
360 Degree Camera Settings....199
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off....199
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View....199

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....110
About This Publication....13
ABS
See: Brakes....175
Accessing Navigation....352
Accessing the Emergency Exit....272
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position....139
AC Charging....152
Charging at Home....152
Charging in Public....154
Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord....156
Activating and Deactivating Lane Change Assist....217
Active Park Assist....200
Active Park Assist Precautions....200
Adaptive Cruise Control....203
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting....214
Lane Centering....209
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting....212
Predictive Speed Assist....212
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation....206
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators....209
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations....204
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions....203
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting....214
Adaptive Cruise Control – Warning Lamps....214
Adaptive Front Lighting....85
How Does Adaptive Front Lighting Work....85
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting....85
Adaptive Front Lighting – Information Messages....85
Adding Favorites....337
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors....93
Adjusting the Headlamps....296
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness....87
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor....256
Adjusting the Map....352
Changing the Format of the Map....353
Zooming the Map In and Out....352
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy....35
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....68
Adjusting the Volume....337
Airbag Precautions....38
Airbags....36
Airbags – Troubleshooting....39
Airbags – Troubleshooting....39
Airbags – Warning Lamps....39

Index

Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....110
All-Wheel Drive....174
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting....174
All-Wheel Drive Limitations....174
All-Wheel Drive Precautions....174
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting....174
All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages....174
Ambient Lighting....87
Adjusting Ambient Lighting....87
Switching Ambient Lighting On and Off....87
Anti-Lock Braking System....175
Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations....175
Anti-Theft Alarm System....65
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System....66
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System....66
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work....65
What Are the Inclination Sensors....66
What Are the Interior Sensors....65
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System....65
What Is the Battery Backup Alarm....66
What Is the Perimeter Alarm....65
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings....66
Setting the Alarm Security Level....66
What are the Alarm Security Levels....66
Applying the Electric Parking Brake....179
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency....179
App Requirements....350
Apps....350
Audio System....336
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio....339
FM Radio....338
Audio System Precautions....336
Authorized Dealer Directory....358
Auto Air Refresh....116
Automatically Refreshing the Interior Air....116
Manually Refreshing the Interior Air....116
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror....92
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations....92
What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror....92
Auto Hold....185
Auto Hold Indicators....185
Autolamps....78
What Are Autolamps....78
Autolock....52
Autolock Requirements....52
What Is Autolock....52
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake....180
Automatic High Beam Control....80
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators....82
Automatic High Beam Control Limitations....81
Automatic High Beam Control Precautions....81
Automatic High Beam Control Requirements....81
How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work....80
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control....82
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off....82
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting....82
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages....82
Auto Mode....113
Auto Mode Indicators....113
Switching Auto Mode On and Off....113
Switching Dual Mode On and Off....114
Autorelock....52
How Does Autorelock Work....52
Autounlock....52
Autounlock Requirements....52
What Is Autounlock....52
Autowipers....71
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor....71
Autowipers Settings....71
What Are Autowipers....71
AWD
See: All-Wheel Drive....174

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

B

Beginning a Voice Interaction.....343
Blind Spot Assist.....229
  Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....231
  Blind Spot Assist – Information Messages.....232
  Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....230
  How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....229
  What Is Blind Spot Assist.....229
Bluetooth®.....349
Bonnet Lock
  See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....287
Booster Seats.....31
Brake Fluid Specification.....329
Brake Over Accelerator.....175
Brake Precautions.....175
Brakes.....175
  Anti-Lock Braking System.....175
  Brakes – Troubleshooting.....176
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....176
  Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....178
  Brakes – Information Messages.....177
  Brakes – Warning Lamps.....176
Breaking-In.....265

C

Canceling a Voice Interaction.....343
Canceling the Set Speed.....208
Canceling the Set Speed Limit.....225
Capacities and Specifications.....328
Center Console.....136
  Adjusting the Center Console.....136
  Center Console Videos.....137
  Opening the Center Console.....136
Center Display Limitations.....341
Center Display Overview.....341
Center Display Precautions.....341
Changing a Flat Tire.....325
Changing a Road Wheel.....325
Changing the Backup Battery.....46
Changing the Language.....106
Changing the Measurement Unit.....106
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....47
Changing the Set Speed Limit.....225
Charge Coupler Manual Release.....161
Charge Port Indicators.....151
Charging a Device.....131
Charging a Wireless Device.....134
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols.....165
Charging Equipment Indicators.....146
Charging Equipment Overview.....144
Charging Equipment Precautions.....143
Charging Settings.....162
Charging Your Vehicle.....143
  AC Charging.....152
  Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....166
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....166
  Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....168
  Charging Your Vehicle – Information Messages.....167
  Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps.....166
Charging Your Vehicle Videos.....168
Checking the Brake Fluid.....175
Checking the Tire Pressures.....311
Checking the Wiper Blades.....72
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....27
  Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....27
  Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....27
  What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....27
Child Restraints.....28
  Child Restraint Position Information.....28
  Child Restraints Recommendation.....30
  Installing Child Restraints.....31
Child Safety.....26
  Child Restraint Anchor Points.....27
  Child Restraints.....28
  Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....33
Child Safety Lock Indicator.....32
Child Safety Locks.....32
Child Safety Locks – Troubleshooting.....33
  Child Safety Locks – Information Messages.....33
Child Safety Precautions.....26

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Cleaning the Exterior....297
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors....298
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel....297
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps....297
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics....298
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions....297
Cleaning the Underbody....298
Cleaning Wheels....297
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades....297
Cleaning the Interior....298
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats....300
Cleaning Displays and Screens....299
Cleaning Fabric....299
Cleaning Leather....299
Cleaning Plastic....299
Cleaning Seatbelts....300
Cleaning Storage Compartments....300
Cleaning the Instrument Panel....298
Cleaning Vinyl....299
Climate Control....110
Auto Mode....113
Climate Control Hints....114
Closing the Liftgate....59
Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate....60
Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle....59
Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle....59
Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote Control....60
Cold Weather Precautions....265
Connected Navigation....352
Connected Vehicle....333
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting....334
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network....333
Connected Vehicle Data....19
Connected Vehicle Limitations....333
Connected Vehicle Requirements....333
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting....334
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions....334
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device....349
Connecting a Trailer....258
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting....260
Tow Ball....258
Connecting a Trailer Precautions....258
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting....260
Connecting a Trailer – Warning Lamps....260
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network....333
Connecting FordPass to the Modem....333
Enabling and Disabling the Modem....333
What Is the Modem....333
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network....333
Connecting Your Phone....345
Coolant....290
Adding Coolant....290
Changing the Coolant....291
Checking the Coolant Level....290
Coolant – Information Messages....292
Coolant Videos....293
Coolant – Warning Lamps....292
Cooling System Capacity and Specification....329
Crash and Breakdown Information....269
Jump Starting the Vehicle....270
Post-Crash Alert System....272
Recovery Towing....273
Cross Traffic Alert....237
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting....239
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators....238
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations....237
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions....237
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting....239
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages....239
Cup Holders....135
Cup Holder Precautions....135
Locating the Cup Holders....135
Customer Information....365
Radio Frequency Certification Labels....366

Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display....102

D

Data Privacy....17
DC Charging....158
Declaration of Conformity....365
Deleting a Personal Profile....351
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio....339
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations....339
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station....339
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio....339
Directing the Flow of Air....112
Dog Guard
See: Partitioning System....251
Doors and Locks....50
Autolock....52
Autorelock....52
Autounlock....52
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting....53
Mislock....52
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle....51
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle....50
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting....53
Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked Questions....53
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps....53
Drive Mode Control....219
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting....220
Drive Modes....219
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting....220
Drive Mode Control – Frequently Asked Questions....220
Drive Modes....219
Eco....219
Individual....219
Normal....219
Sport....219
Traction....219
Driver Alert....246
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting....247
Driver Alert Indicators....247
Driver Alert Precautions....246
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting....247
Driver Alert – Information Messages....247
Driver State Assist....42
Driver State Assist – Troubleshooting....43
Driver State Assist Limitations....43
Driver State Assist Precautions....42
Driver State Assist – Troubleshooting....43
Driver State Assist – Information Messages....43
Driver State Assist – Warning Lamps....43
Driving Hints....265
Driving in Special Conditions - LHD 4WD/RHD 4WD....265
Electric Vehicle....267
Driving in Special Conditions - LHD 4WD/RHD 4WD....265
Driving In Sand....266
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain....265
Driving Through Mud and Water....265
Driving on Snow and Ice....265
Driving Through Shallow Water....266
Drowsiness Monitor
See: Driver Alert....246

E

Easy Entry and Exit....56
eCall....44
eCall – Troubleshooting....46
eCall – Troubleshooting....46
eCall – Information Messages....46
eCall User Information....370
Efficient Drive Mode....221
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators....222
Efficient Drive Mode Precautions....221
Electric Motor Audible Warnings....171
Electric Motor....169
Electric Motor – Troubleshooting....173
Roll-Away Protection....171
Selector Positions....169
Electric Motor Precautions....169

Electric Motor – Troubleshooting.....173
Electric Motor – Information Messages.....173
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning.....180
Electric Parking Brake.....179
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....180
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....180
Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages.....180
Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....180
Electric Power Steering.....189
Electric Power Steering Precautions.....189
How Does Electric Power Steering Work.....189
Electric Vehicle.....267
Maximizing Your Driving Range.....267
Emergency Call Indicators.....45
Emergency Call Limitations.....44
Emergency Call Requirements.....44
Emergency Call System Data.....20
Emergency Equipment.....277
Emergency Towing.....275
Enabling Local Hazard Information.....223
Energy Consumption Figures.....142
Energy Consumption Regulations.....141
Entering a Parking Space.....201
Environment.....21
Evasive Steering Assist.....244
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....244
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....244
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....244
Event Data.....18
Exiting a Parking Space.....202
Exit Warning.....234
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....236
Exit Warning Indicators.....235
Exit Warning Limitations.....234
Exit Warning Precautions.....234
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....236
Exit Warning – Information Messages.....236
Exterior Lamps.....78
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....80
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off.....79
Switching the Parking Lamps On and Off.....79
Using All Weather Lamps.....79
Using the Entry and Exit Lighting.....80
Using the Rear Fog Lamps.....79
Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....78
Exterior Lighting Control.....76
Exterior Lighting.....76
Adaptive Front Lighting.....85
Adaptive Front Lighting – Troubleshooting.....85
Autolamps.....78
Automatic High Beam Control.....80
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....82
Exterior Lamps.....78
Glare Free High Beam Control.....83
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....84
Headlamps.....76
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....78
Exterior Mirrors.....93
Exterior Mirrors Videos.....94
Exterior Overview.....24

F

Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....34
Flat Tire
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....325
Floor Mats.....268
FM Radio.....338
FM Radio Limitations.....338
Selecting an FM Radio Station.....339
Folding the Exterior Mirrors.....93
Forward Collision Warning.....244
What is Forward Collision Warning.....244
Front Parking Aid.....193
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....193
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....193
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....193
What is the Front Parking Aid.....193

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Front Seat Precautions....117
Front Seats....117
Heated Seats....122
Manual Seats....118
Massage Seats....121
Power Seats....118
Front Seats Videos....122
Fuse Precautions....278
Fuses....278
Interior Fuse Box....281
Under Hood Fuse Box....278

G

Glare Free High Beam Control....83
Glare Free High Beam Control Indicators....84
Glare Free High Beam Control Limitations....84
Glare Free High Beam Control Precautions....83
Glare Free High Beam Control Requirements....83
How Does Glare Free High Beam Control Work....83
Overriding Glare Free High Beam Control....84
Switching Glare Free High Beam Control On and Off....84
Glare Free High Beam Control – Troubleshooting....84
Glare Free High Beam Control – Information Messages....84
Global Opening and Closing....90
Global Opening and Closing Videos....91
Using Global Closing....90
Using Global Opening....90
What Is Global Opening and Closing....90
Glossary of Tire Terminology....307
Glove Compartment....135
Opening the Glove Compartment....135

H

Headlamp Adjusting
See: Adjusting the Headlamps....296
Headlamps....76
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps....77
Headlamp Indicators....77
Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the Left or Right-Hand Side of the Road....76
Using the High Beam Headlamps....76
Headlamps – Troubleshooting....78
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions....78
Head Up Display....107
Head Up Display Overview....107
Head Up Display Settings....107
Heated Seats....122
Heated Seat Precautions....122
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off....122
Heating
See: Climate Control....110
High Voltage Battery Gauge....96
High Voltage Battery....140
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting....142
High Voltage Battery Precautions....140
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting....142
High Voltage Battery – Information Messages....142
High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps....142
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions....269
Home Screen....341
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....287
How Does Active Park Assist Work....200
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work....203
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work....174
How Does Auto Hold Work....185
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work....237
How Does Drive Mode Control Work....219
How Does Driver Alert Work....246
How Does Driver State Assist Work....42
How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work....56
How Does eCall Work....44

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

How Does Efficient Drive Mode Work....221
How Does Exit Warning Work....234
How Does Lane Change Assist Work....216
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work....241
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work....240
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work....181
How Does Stability Control Work....187
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work....198
How Does the Center Mounted Side Airbag Work....37
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work....224
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work....227
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work....126
How Does Traction Control Work....186
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work....248
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work....264
How Do Personal Profiles Work....351
How Do the Front Airbags Work....36
How Do the Side Airbags Work....36
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work....37

I

Identifying Fuse Types....286
Identifying the Audio Unit....336
Inflating the Tires....311
Information on the Tire Sidewall....304
Inspecting the Tire for Damage....313
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cargo Net....255
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover....255
Instrument Cluster Display....102
Instrument Cluster Indicators....99
Instrument Cluster....95
Instrument Cluster Overview....95
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps....97
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings....226
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators....226
Intelligent Speed Limiter....224
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting....226
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions....224
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting....226
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions....226
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit....225
Interior Air Quality....116
Auto Air Refresh....116
Interior Bulbs....296
Interior Bulb Specification Chart....296
Interior Fuse Box....281
Accessing the Interior Fuse Box....281
Identifying the Fuses in the Interior Fuse Box....282
Interior Lamp Function....86
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off....87
What Is the Interior Lamp Function....86
Interior Lighting....86
Ambient Lighting....87
Interior Lamp Function....86
Interior Lighting Videos....88
Interior Mirror....92
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror....92
Interior Mirror Precautions....92
Interior Overview - LHD....22
Interior Overview - RHD....23
Introduction....13

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....270
Jump Starting Precautions....270
Jump Starting the Vehicle....270
Preparing the Vehicle....270

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

K

Keyless Entry....54
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting....55
Keyless Entry Limitations....54
Keyless Entry Settings....54
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting....55
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions....55
Keys and Remote Controls....47
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting....49
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting....49
Keys and Remote Controls – Frequently Asked Questions....49

L

Lane Centering....209
How Does Lane Centering Work....209
Lane Centering Alerts....211
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation....211
Lane Centering Indicators....212
Lane Centering Limitations....210
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation....211
Lane Centering Precautions....209
Lane Centering Requirements....209
Switching Lane Centering On and Off....210
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting....212
Lane Centering – Information Messages....212
Lane Change Assist Cancellation....217
Lane Change Assist....216
Lane Change Assist – Troubleshooting....218
Lane Change Assist Limitations....217
Lane Change Assist Precautions....216
Lane Change Assist – Troubleshooting....218
Lane Change Assist – Information Messages....218
Lane Keeping System Indicators....228
Lane Keeping System....227
Blind Spot Assist....229
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting....233
Lane Keeping System Limitations....227
Lane Keeping System Precautions....227
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting....233
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages....233
Liftgate....57
Closing the Liftgate....59
Liftgate – Troubleshooting....61
Opening the Liftgate....57
Liftgate Obstacle Detection....61
Liftgate Precautions....57
Liftgate – Troubleshooting....61
Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions....62
Liftgate – Warning Lamps....61
Liftgate Videos....62
Load Carrying....251
Roof Rack....253
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier....254
Load Carrying Precautions....251
Load Carrying Videos....254
Loading Your Trailer....261
Load Retention Net
See: Partitioning System....251
Local Hazard Information Indicators....223
Local Hazard Information....223
Local Hazard Information Precautions....223
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir....175
Locating the Charge Port....150
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors....238
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors....235
Locating the Memory Function Buttons....128
Locating the Power Outlets....132
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors....243
Locating the Rear View Camera....196
Locating the Tire label....304
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit....315
Locating the USB Ports....130

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger....133
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points....257
Locating the Luggage Compartment Anchor Points....257
Luggage Compartment....255
Luggage Compartment Anchor Points....257
Luggage Compartment Precautions....255
Luggage Compartment Videos....257

M

Maintenance....287
12V Battery....293
12V Battery – Troubleshooting....295
Coolant....290
Interior Bulbs....296
Maintenance Precautions....287
Making and Receiving a Phone Call....346
Manually Making an Emergency Call....44
Manual Seats....118
Adjusting the Head Restraint....124
Adjusting the Seat Backrest....118
Adjusting the Seat Height....118
Folding the Seat Backrest....124
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....118
Removing the Head Restraint....124
Unfolding the Seat Backrest....125
Massage Seats....121
Switching the Massage Seats On and Off....121
Memory Function....128
Memory Function Precautions....128
Mislock....52
How Does Mislock Work....52
Mobile Communications Equipment....369
Mobile Device Data....19
Movable Screen....340
Movable Screen Videos....340
Muting the Audio....338

N

Navigation Map Updates....352
Navigation....352
Adjusting the Map....352
Route Guidance....355
Setting a Destination....353
Waypoints....354

O

Opening and Closing the Hood....287
Opening and Closing the Windows....89
Opening the Liftgate....57
Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate....58
Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle....57
Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle....57
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control....57
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle....51
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking....51
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle....50
Double Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control....50
Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade....51
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade....50
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control....50
OTA
See: Vehicle Software Updates....356
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist....182
Overriding the Set Speed....208
Over the air
See: Vehicle Software Updates....356
Over-the-air
See: Vehicle Software Updates....356

P

Parking Aid Indicators....195
Parking Aid Precautions....191

Parking Aids....191
Front Parking Aid....193
Rear Parking Aid....192
Side Parking Aid....194
Partitioning System....251
Passenger Airbag Indicators....39
Passive Anti-Theft System....65
How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work....65
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System....65
Pedestrian Alert System....41
Pedestrian Alert System Precautions....41
Performing a System Reset....357
Personalized Settings....106
Personal Profiles....351
Phone Menu....345
Phone....345
Phone Precautions....345
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®....349
Playing Media Using the USB Port....130
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source....337
Post-Collision Braking....272
Post-Crash Alert System....272
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work....272
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations....272
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off....272
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System....272
Power Gauge....96
Powering Off....138
Power Outlet....132
Power Outlet Precautions....132
Power Seats....118
Adjusting the Head Restraint....118
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....121
Adjusting the Seat Backrest....121
Adjusting the Seat Cushion....120
Adjusting the Seat Height....121
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....120
Removing the Head Restraint....119
Power-Up
See: Vehicle Software Updates....356
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations....242
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions....241
Pre-Collision Assist....240
Evasive Steering Assist....244
Forward Collision Warning....244
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting....244
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting....244
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages....245
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps....244
Predictive Speed Assist....212
How Does Predictive Speed Assist Work....212
Predictive Speed Assist Alerts....214
Predictive Speed Assist Indicators....214
Predictive Speed Assist Limitations....213
Predictive Speed Assist Precautions....212
Switching Predictive Speed Assist Mode On and Off....213
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage....302
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery....140
Programming the Remote Control....49
Protecting the Environment....21
Puncture
See: Changing a Flat Tire....325

R

Radio Frequency Certification Labels....366
Antennas....366
Blind Spot Information System Sensors....366
Body Control Module....366
Cruise Control Module....366
Instrument Cluster....367
Keys and Remote Controls....367
Operating System....367
Radio Transceiver Module....367
Telematics Control Unit....368
Wireless Accessory Charging Module....368
REACH....365
Rear Loadspace Hatch....252

Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations....126
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions....126
Rear Occupant Alert System....126
Rear Parking Aid....192
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors....192
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings....192
Rear Parking Aid Limitations....192
What is the Rear Parking Aid....192
Rear Seats....124
Manual Seats....124
Rear Seats Videos....125
Rear View Camera Guide Lines....196
Rear View Camera Precautions....196
Rear View Camera....196
Rear View Camera Videos....197
Rebooting the Center Display....342
Recalling a Preset Position....129
Recovery Towing....273
Accessing the Front Towing Point....273
Accessing the Rear Towing Point....273
Installing the Towing Eye....274
Locating the Towing Eye....274
Recycling and Disposing Labels....21
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery....141
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge....180
Remote Control Limitations....47
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle....109
Remote Start Limitations....109
Remote Start Precautions....109
Remote Start....109
Remote Start Settings....109
Removing the Key Blade....47
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage....303
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....300
Replacement Parts Recommendation....368
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....49
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades....72
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades....73
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function....52
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System....322
Resuming the Set Speed Limit....225
Resuming the Set Speed....208
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators....182
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions....181
Reverse Brake Assist....181
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting....183
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting....183
Reverse Brake Assist – Frequently Asked Questions....184
Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages....183
Reverse Wipe....72
Reverse Wipe Settings....72
What Is Reverse Wipe....72
Roll-Away Protection....171
How Does Roll-Away Protection Work....171
Roll-Away Protection Limitations....171
Switching the Roll-Away Protection On and Off....172
Rollover Warning....365
Roof Rack....253
Roof Rack Load Capacities....253
Roof Rack Precautions....253
Route Guidance....355
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume....355
Canceling Route Guidance....355
Repeating an Instruction....355
Running-In
See: Breaking-In....265

S

Saving a Preset Position....128
Scrolling Through Menu Items....338
Searching for a Parking Space....200
Seatbelt Precautions....34
Seatbelt Reminder....35
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings....35
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators....35

Seatbelts....34
Seatbelt Reminder....35
Security....65
Anti-Theft Alarm System....65
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings....66
Passive Anti-Theft System....65
Selecting a Drive Mode....219
Selecting a Menu Item....338
Selecting a Personal Profile....351
Selecting the Audio Source....336
Selector Position Indicators....171
Selector Positions....169
Brake (B)....170
Drive (D)....170
Neutral (N)....169
Park (P)....169
Reverse (R)....169
Service Data....18
Service Intervals....364
Setting a Destination....353
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest....354
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination....353
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination....354
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination....354
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen....353
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen....353
Settings Data....19
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap....207
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed....206
Setting the Blower Motor Speed....111
Setting the Clock and Date....338
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height....59
Setting the Speed Limit....224
Setting the Temperature....112
Setting the Wake Word....343
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear....170
Side Parking Aid....194
Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors....194
Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings....194
Side Parking Aid Limitations....194
What is the Side Parking Aid....194
Sitting in the Correct Position....117
Software Update
See: Vehicle Software Updates....356
Special Notices - Turkey....14
Speedometer....96
Stability Control Indicator....187
Stability Control....187
Stability Control – Troubleshooting....188
Stability Control – Troubleshooting....188
Stability Control – Information Messages....188
Starting and Powering Off Precautions....138
Starting and Powering Off....138
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting....139
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting....139
Starting and Powering Off – Frequently Asked Questions....139
Starting the Vehicle....138
Status Bar....341
Steering....189
Electric Power Steering....189
Steering – Troubleshooting....189
Steering – Troubleshooting....189
Steering – Information Messages....190
Steering – Warning Lamps....189
Steering Wheel....68
Stopping the Liftgate Movement....61
Storage....135
Center Console....136
Cup Holders....135
Glove Compartment....135
Under Floor Storage....137
Storing a First Aid Kit....277
Storing a Warning Triangle....277
Storing Your Vehicle....302
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off....200
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off....206
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off....110

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off....86
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off....347
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off....347
Switching Auto Hold On and Off....185
Switching Climate Control On and Off....110
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off....238
Switching Defrost On and Off....111
Switching Driver Alert On and Off....246
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off....56
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off....221
Switching Exit Warning On and Off....235
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter....226
Switching Lane Change Assist On and Off....217
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off....111
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off....111
Switching Parking Aid On and Off....191
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off....243
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off....126
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off....110
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off....337
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off....182
Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off....337
Switching Stability Control On and Off - AWD....187
Switching Stability Control On and Off - RWD....187
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off....347
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off....336
Switching the Display On and Off....339
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off....86
Switching the Hands-Free Liftgate On and Off....58
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off....270
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off....107
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off....111
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off....111
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off....68
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off....224
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off....228
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off....39
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off....86
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off....72
Switching Traction Control On and Off....186
System Update
See: Vehicle Software Updates....356

T

Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications....328
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment....365
Tire Care....311
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations....321
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions....321
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....321
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting....322
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting....322
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages....324

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps....322
Tire Pressure Specifications....311
Tire Replacement Requirements....308
Tire Rotation....313
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components....315
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions....315
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit....315
Tow Ball....258
Deploying the Tow Ball Arm....259
Retracting the Tow Ball Arm....259
Tow Ball Arm Guidelines....258
Tow Ball Components....259
Tow Ball Limitations....258
Tow Ball Precautions....258
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier....254
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier Precautions....254
Tow Bar Mounted Load Capacities....254
Towing a Trailer Limitations....261
Towing a Trailer Precautions....261
Towing a Trailer....261
Towing Weights and Dimensions....262
Towing Weights and Dimensions....262
Tow Bar Dimensions....262
Towing Weight Capacities....262
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions....275
Towing Your Vehicle....275
Traction Control Indicator....186
Traction Control....186
Traction Control – Troubleshooting....186
Traction Control – Troubleshooting....186
Traction Control – Warning Lamps....186
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators....249
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations....248
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions....248
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings....249
Traffic Sign Recognition....248
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting....250
Traffic Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting....250
Traffic Sign Recognition – Information Messages....250
Trailer Sway Control Precautions....264
Trailer Sway Control....264
Trailer Towing Hints....261
Transporting the Vehicle....274
Trip Summary....104
Tyre Pressure Specifications
See: Tire Pressure Specifications....311

U

Under Floor Storage....137
Locating the Luggage Compartment Under Floor Storage....137
Under Hood Fuse Box....278
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box....279
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box....278
Under Hood Overview - LHD....288
Under Hood Overview - RHD....289
USB Ports....130
Using Auto Hold....185
Using Keyless Entry....54
Using Snow Chains....309
Using Summer Tires....309
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls....102
Using the Movable Screen....340
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit....316
Using This Publication....14
Using Winter Tires....309
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging....165

V

Vehicle Care....297
Cleaning the Exterior....297
Cleaning the Interior....298
Vehicle Dimensions....328
Vehicle Identification Number....331
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number....331

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Vehicle Identification Number Overview....331
Vehicle Identification Plate....332
Locating the Vehicle Identification Plate....332
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview....332
Vehicle Identification....331
Vehicle Identification Number....331
Vehicle Identification Plate....332
Vehicle Range Display....96
Vehicle Software Updates....356
Vehicle System Reset....357
Ventilation
See: Climate Control....110
Visual Search....22
Voice Interaction Examples....343
Voice Interaction Settings....344
Voice Interaction....343

W

Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication....14
Washer Fluid Specification....329
Washers....73
Adding Washer Fluid....74
Using the Rear Window Washer....74
Using the Windshield Washer....74
Washer Precautions....73
Washers
See: Wipers and Washers....70
Waxing Your Vehicle....300
Waypoints....354
Adding a Waypoint....354
Editing Waypoints....355
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators....99
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps....97
What Is a Connected Vehicle....333
What Is Active Park Assist....200
What Is Cross Traffic Alert....237
What Is Drive Mode Control....219
What Is Driver Alert....246
What Is eCall....44
What Is Efficient Drive Mode....221
What is Exit Warning....234
What Is Keyless Entry....54
What Is Local Hazard Information....223
What Is Pre-Collision Assist....240
What Is Remote Start....109
What Is Reverse Brake Assist....181
What Is Stability Control....187
What Is the Electric Parking Brake....179
What Is the Head Up Display....107
What Is the High Voltage Battery....140
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter....224
What Is the Lane Keeping System....227
What Is the Memory Function....128
What Is the Pedestrian Alert System....41
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System....126
What Is the Rear View Camera....196
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System....321
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit....315
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger....133
What Is Traction Control....186
What Is Traffic Sign Recognition....248
What is Voice Interaction....343
Wheel and Tire Information....304
Wheel Bolts....326
Wi Fi
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network....333
Window Bounce-Back....91
Overriding Window Bounce-Back....91
Resetting Window Bounce-Back....91
What Is Window Bounce-Back....91
Windows....89
Global Opening and Closing....90
Window Bounce-Back....91
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting....75
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions....75
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps....75
Wipers and Washers Videos....75
Wipers and Washers....70
Autowipers....71
Reverse Wipe....72

Explorer (CFU) 5-Door SUV, CG3968en enGBR, Edition date: 202402, Second-Printing

Washers....73
Wipers....70
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting....75
Wipers....70
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off....70
Wiper Precautions....70
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions....133
Wireless Accessory Charger....133

Y

Your Authorized Dealer....358

CG3968en, Edition date: 202402